

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

## SCHEDULES

### <sup>F1</sup>SCHEDULE A1

#### COLLECTIVE BARGAINING: RECOGNITION

##### Textual Amendments

**F1** Sch. A1 (paras. 1-173) inserted (6.6.2000) by 1999 c. 26, s. 1(3), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 2000/1338, **art. 2(d)**

##### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1** Sch. A1 (paras. 1-173) applied (14.8.2000) by S.I. 2000/1282, **art. 2(5)(a)**

**C2** Sch. A1 modified (temp. from 6.4.2005) by The Employment Relations Act 2004 (Commencement No.3 and Transitional Provisions) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/872), arts. 4, **21**, Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

### PART I

#### RECOGNITION

##### *Introduction*

- 1 A trade union (or trade unions) seeking recognition to be entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a group or groups of workers may make a request in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.
- 2 (1) This paragraph applies for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule.
- (2) References to the bargaining unit are to the group of workers concerned (or the groups taken together).
- (3) References to the proposed bargaining unit are to the bargaining unit proposed in the request for recognition.
- [<sup>F2</sup>(3A) References to an appropriate bargaining unit's being decided by the CAC are to a bargaining unit's being decided by the CAC to be appropriate under paragraph 19(2) or (3) or 19A(2) or (3).]
- (4) References to the employer are to the employer of the workers constituting the bargaining unit concerned.
- (5) References to the parties are to the union (or unions) and the employer.

##### Textual Amendments

**F2** Sch. A1 para. 2(3A) inserted (6.4.2005) by Employment Relations Act 2004 (c. 24), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), **Sch. 1 para. 23(2)**; S.I. 2005/872, **art. 4**, Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 3 (1) This paragraph applies for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (2) The meaning of collective bargaining given by section 178(1) shall not apply.
- (3) References to collective bargaining are to negotiations relating to pay, hours and holidays; but this has effect subject to sub-paragraph (4).
- (4) If the parties agree matters as the subject of collective bargaining, references to collective bargaining are to negotiations relating to the agreed matters; and this is the case whether the agreement is made before or after the time when the CAC issues a declaration, or the parties agree, that the union is (or unions are) entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a bargaining unit.
- (5) Sub-paragraph (4) does not apply in construing paragraph 31(3).
- (6) Sub-paragraphs (2) to (5) do not apply in construing paragraph 35 or 44.

*Request for recognition*

- 4 (1) The union or unions seeking recognition must make a request for recognition to the employer.
- (2) Paragraphs 5 to 9 apply to the request.
- 5 The request is not valid unless it is received by the employer.
- 6 The request is not valid unless the union (or each of the unions) has a certificate [<sup>F3</sup>of independence].

**Textual Amendments**

**F3** Words in Sch. A1 para. 6 substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 50\(6\), 59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with [arts. 6-21](#))

- 7 (1) The request is not valid unless the employer, taken with any associated employer or employers, employs—
  - (a) at least 21 workers on the day the employer receives the request, or
  - (b) an average of at least 21 workers in the 13 weeks ending with that day.
- (2) To find the average under sub-paragraph (1)(b)—
  - (a) take the number of workers employed in each of the 13 weeks (including workers not employed for the whole of the week);
  - (b) aggregate the 13 numbers;
  - (c) divide the aggregate by 13.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(a) any worker employed by an associated company incorporated outside Great Britain must be ignored unless the day the request was made fell within a period during which he ordinarily worked in Great Britain.
- (4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(b) any worker employed by an associated company incorporated outside Great Britain must be ignored in relation to a week unless the whole or any part of that week fell within a period during which he ordinarily worked in Great Britain.

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (5) For the purposes of sub-paragraphs (3) and (4) a worker who is employed on board a ship registered in the register maintained under section 8 of the Merchant Shipping Act 1995 shall be treated as ordinarily working in Great Britain unless—
- (a) the ship's entry in the register specifies a port outside Great Britain as the port to which the vessel is to be treated as belonging,
  - (b) the employment is wholly outside Great Britain, or
  - (c) the worker is not ordinarily resident in Great Britain.

[<sup>F4</sup>(5A) Sub-paragraph (5B) applies to an agency worker whose contract within regulation 3(1)(b) of the Agency Workers Regulations 2010 (contract with the temporary work agency) is not a contract of employment.

(5B) For the purposes of sub-paragraphs (1) and (2), the agency worker is to be treated as having a contract of employment with the temporary work agency for the duration of the assignment with the employer (and “assignment” has the same meaning as in those Regulations).]

- (6) The Secretary of State may by order—
- (a) provide that sub-paragraphs (1) to (5) are not to apply, or are not to apply in specified circumstances, or
  - (b) vary the number of workers for the time being specified in sub-paragraph (1); and different provision may be made for different circumstances.
- (7) An order under sub-paragraph (6)—
- (a) shall be made by statutory instrument, and
  - (b) may include supplementary, incidental, saving or transitional provisions.
- (8) No such order shall be made unless a draft of it has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.

#### Textual Amendments

**F4** Sch. A1 para. 7(5A)(5B) inserted (1.10.2011) by [The Agency Workers Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/93\)](#), reg. 1(1), [Sch. 2 para. 7\(2\)](#)

- 8 The request is not valid unless it—
- (a) is in writing,
  - (b) identifies the union or unions and the bargaining unit, and
  - (c) states that it is made under this Schedule.
- 9 The Secretary of State may by order made by statutory instrument prescribe the form of requests and the procedure for making them; and if he does so the request is not valid unless it complies with the order.

#### *Parties agree*

- 10 (1) If before the end of the first period the parties agree a bargaining unit and that the union is (or unions are) to be recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the unit, no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (2) If before the end of the first period the employer informs the union (or unions) that the employer does not accept the request but is willing to negotiate, sub-paragraph (3) applies.
- (3) The parties may conduct negotiations with a view to agreeing a bargaining unit and that the union is (or unions are) to be recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the unit.
- (4) If such an agreement is made before the end of the second period no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
- (5) The employer and the union (or unions) may request ACAS to assist in conducting the negotiations.
- (6) The first period is the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the employer receives the request for recognition.
- (7) The second period is—
  - (a) the period of 20 working days starting with the day after that on which the first period ends, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the parties may from time to time agree.

*Employer rejects request*

- 11 (1) This paragraph applies if—
  - (a) before the end of the first period the employer fails to respond to the request, or
  - (b) before the end of the first period the employer informs the union (or unions) that the employer does not accept the request (without indicating a willingness to negotiate).
- (2) The union (or unions) may apply to the CAC to decide both these questions—
  - [<sup>F5</sup>(a) whether the proposed bargaining unit is appropriate;]
  - (b) whether the union has (or unions have) the support of a majority of the workers constituting the appropriate bargaining unit.

**Textual Amendments**

**F5** Sch. A1 para. 11(2)(a) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 1\(1\), 59\(2\)-\(4\); S.I. 2005/872, art. 4, Sch.](#) (with arts. 6-21)

*Negotiations fail*

- 12 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies if—
  - (a) the employer informs the union (or unions) under paragraph 10(2), and
  - (b) no agreement is made before the end of the second period.
- (2) The union (or unions) may apply to the CAC to decide both these questions—
  - [<sup>F6</sup>(a) whether the proposed bargaining unit is appropriate;]
  - (b) whether the union has (or unions have) the support of a majority of the workers constituting the appropriate bargaining unit.

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (3) Sub-paragraph (4) applies if—
- (a) the employer informs the union (or unions) under paragraph 10(2), and
  - (b) before the end of the second period the parties agree a bargaining unit but not that the union is (or unions are) to be recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the unit.
- (4) The union (or unions) may apply to the CAC to decide the question whether the union has (or unions have) the support of a majority of the workers constituting the bargaining unit.
- (5) But no application may be made under this paragraph if within the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the employer informs the union (or unions) under paragraph 10(2) the employer proposes that ACAS be requested to assist in conducting the negotiations and—
- (a) the union rejects (or unions reject) the proposal, or
  - (b) the union fails (or unions fail) to accept the proposal within the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the employer makes the proposal.

#### Textual Amendments

- F6** Sch. A1 para. 12(2)(a) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 1\(2\), 59\(2\)-\(4\); S.I. 2005/872, art. 4, Sch.](#) (with [arts. 6-21](#))

#### *Acceptance of applications*

- 13 The CAC must give notice to the parties of receipt of an application under paragraph 11 or 12.
- 14 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) two or more relevant applications are made,
  - (b) at least one worker falling within one of the relevant bargaining units also falls within the other relevant bargaining unit (or units), and
  - (c) the CAC has not accepted any of the applications.
- (2) A relevant application is an application under paragraph 11 or 12.
- (3) In relation to a relevant application, the relevant bargaining unit is—
- (a) the proposed bargaining unit, where the application is under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2);
  - (b) the agreed bargaining unit, where the application is under paragraph 12(4).
- (4) Within the acceptance period the CAC must decide, with regard to each relevant application, whether the 10 per cent test is satisfied.
- (5) The 10 per cent test is satisfied if members of the union (or unions) constitute at least 10 per cent of the workers constituting the relevant bargaining unit.
- (6) The acceptance period is—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC receives the last relevant application, or

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.
- (7) If the CAC decides that—
- (a) the 10 per cent test is satisfied with regard to more than one of the relevant applications, or
  - (b) the 10 per cent test is satisfied with regard to none of the relevant applications,
- the CAC must not accept any of the relevant applications.
- (8) If the CAC decides that the 10 per cent test is satisfied with regard to one only of the relevant applications the CAC—
- (a) must proceed under paragraph 15 with regard to that application, and
  - (b) must not accept any of the other relevant applications.
- (9) The CAC must give notice of its decision to the parties.
- (10) If by virtue of this paragraph the CAC does not accept an application, no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule in relation to that application.
- 15 (1) This paragraph applies to these applications—
- (a) any application with regard to which no decision has to be made under paragraph 14;
  - (b) any application with regard to which the CAC must proceed under this paragraph by virtue of paragraph 14.
- (2) Within the acceptance period the CAC must decide whether—
- (a) the request for recognition to which the application relates is valid within the terms of paragraphs 5 to 9, and
  - (b) the application is made in accordance with paragraph 11 or 12 and admissible within the terms of paragraphs 33 to 42.
- (3) In deciding those questions the CAC must consider any evidence which it has been given by the employer or the union (or unions).
- (4) If the CAC decides that the request is not valid or the application is not made in accordance with paragraph 11 or 12 or is not admissible—
- (a) the CAC must give notice of its decision to the parties,
  - (b) the CAC must not accept the application, and
  - (c) no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
- (5) If the CAC decides that the request is valid and the application is made in accordance with paragraph 11 or 12 and is admissible it must—
- (a) accept the application, and
  - (b) give notice of the acceptance to the parties.
- (6) The acceptance period is—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC receives the application, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.
- 16 (1) If an application under paragraph [F719F(5) or] 11 or 12 is accepted by the CAC, the union (or unions) may not withdraw the application—

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (a) after the CAC issues a declaration under paragraph 22(2), or
  - (b) after the union (or the last of the unions) receives notice under paragraph 22(3) or 23(2).
- (2) If an application is withdrawn by the union (or unions)—
- (a) the CAC must give notice of the withdrawal to the employer, and
  - (b) no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.

#### Textual Amendments

- F7** Words in Sch. A1 para. 16(1)(a) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(3\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

#### *Notice to cease consideration of application*

- 17 (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC has received an application under paragraph 11 or 12 and—
- (a) it has not decided whether the application is admissible, or
  - (b) it has decided that the application is admissible.
- (2) No further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule if, before the final event occurs, the parties give notice to the CAC that they want no further steps to be taken.
- (3) The final event occurs when the first of the following occurs—
- (a) the CAC issues a declaration under paragraph [<sup>F8</sup>19F(5) or] 22(2) in consequence of the application;
  - (b) the last day of the notification period ends;
- and the notification period is that defined by paragraph [<sup>F9</sup>24(6)] and arising from the application.

#### Textual Amendments

- F8** Words in Sch. A1 para. 17(3)(a) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(4\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)
- F9** Words in Sch. A1 para. 17(3) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(4\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

#### *Appropriate bargaining unit*

- 18 (1) If the CAC accepts an application under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2) it must try to help the parties to reach within the appropriate period an agreement as to what the appropriate bargaining unit is.
- (2) The appropriate period is [<sup>F10</sup>(subject to any notice under sub-paragraph (3), (4) or (5))]  
—
- (a) the period of 20 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC gives notice of acceptance of the application, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- [<sup>F11</sup>(3) If, during the appropriate period, the CAC concludes that there is no reasonable prospect of the parties' agreeing an appropriate bargaining unit before the time when (apart from this sub-paragraph) the appropriate period would end, the CAC may, by a notice given to the parties, declare that the appropriate period ends with the date of the notice.
- (4) If, during the appropriate period, the parties apply to the CAC for a declaration that the appropriate period is to end with a date (specified in the application) which is earlier than the date with which it would otherwise end, the CAC may, by a notice given to the parties, declare that the appropriate period ends with the specified date.
- (5) If the CAC has declared under sub-paragraph (4) that the appropriate period ends with a specified date, it may before that date by a notice given to the parties specify a later date with which the appropriate period ends.
- (6) A notice under sub-paragraph (3) must contain reasons for reaching the conclusion mentioned in that sub-paragraph.
- (7) A notice under sub-paragraph (5) must contain reasons for the extension of the appropriate period.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F10** Words in Sch. A1 para. 18(2) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 2\(2\), 59\(2\)-\(4\); S.I. 2005/872, art. 4, Sch.](#) (with arts. 6-21)
- F11** Sch. A1 para. 18(3)-(7) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 2\(3\), 59\(2\)-\(4\); S.I. 2005/872, art. 4, Sch.](#) (with arts. 6-21)

- [<sup>F12</sup>18A(1) This paragraph applies if the CAC accepts an application under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2).
- (2) Within 5 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC gives the employer notice of acceptance of the application, the employer must supply the following information to the union (or unions) and the CAC—
- (a) a list of the categories of worker in the proposed bargaining unit,
  - (b) a list of the workplaces at which the workers in the proposed bargaining unit work, and
  - (c) the number of workers the employer reasonably believes to be in each category at each workplace.
- (3) The lists and numbers supplied under this paragraph must be as accurate as is reasonably practicable in the light of the information in the possession of the employer at the time when he complies with sub-paragraph (2).
- (4) The lists and numbers supplied to the union (or unions) and to the CAC must be the same.
- (5) For the purposes of this paragraph, the workplace at which a worker works is—
- (a) if the person works at or from a single set of premises, those premises, and
  - (b) in any other case, the premises with which the worker's employment has the closest connection.]



**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

### Textual Amendments

**F12** Sch. A1 para. 18A inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 3, 59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with [arts. 6-21](#))

- [<sup>F13</sup>19 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC accepts an application under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2),
  - (b) the parties have not agreed an appropriate bargaining unit at the end of the appropriate period (defined by paragraph 18), and
  - (c) at the end of that period either no request under paragraph 19A(1)(b) has been made or such a request has been made but the condition in paragraph 19A(1)(c) has not been met.
- (2) Within the decision period, the CAC must decide whether the proposed bargaining unit is appropriate.
- (3) If the CAC decides that the proposed bargaining unit is not appropriate, it must also decide within the decision period a bargaining unit which is appropriate.
- (4) The decision period is—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that with which the appropriate period ends, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.]

### Textual Amendments

**F13** Sch. A1 paras. 19-19B substituted (6.4.2005) for Sch. A1 para. 19 by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 4, 59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with [arts. 6-21](#))

- [<sup>F14</sup>19A(1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC accepts an application under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2),
  - (b) during the appropriate period (defined by paragraph 18), the CAC is requested by the union (or unions) to make a decision under this paragraph, and
  - (c) the CAC is, either at the time the request is made or at a later time during the appropriate period, of the opinion that the employer has failed to comply with the duty imposed by paragraph 18A.
- (2) Within the decision period, the CAC must decide whether the proposed bargaining unit is appropriate.
- (3) If the CAC decides that the proposed bargaining unit is not appropriate, it must also decide within the decision period a bargaining unit which is appropriate.
- (4) The decision period is—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after the day on which the request is made, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

### Textual Amendments

**F14** Sch. A1 paras. 19-19B substituted (6.4.2005) for Sch. A1 para. 19 by [Employment Relations Act 2004](#) (c. 24), [ss. 4, 59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with [arts. 6-21](#))

- 19B (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC has to decide whether a bargaining unit is appropriate for the purposes of paragraph 19(2) or (3) or 19A(2) or (3).
- (2) The CAC must take these matters into account—
- (a) the need for the unit to be compatible with effective management;
  - (b) the matters listed in sub-paragraph (3), so far as they do not conflict with that need.
- (3) The matters are—
- (a) the views of the employer and of the union (or unions);
  - (b) existing national and local bargaining arrangements;
  - (c) the desirability of avoiding small fragmented bargaining units within an undertaking;
  - (d) the characteristics of workers falling within the bargaining unit under consideration and of any other employees of the employer whom the CAC considers relevant;
  - (e) the location of workers.
- (4) In taking an employer's views into account for the purpose of deciding whether the proposed bargaining unit is appropriate, the CAC must take into account any view the employer has about any other bargaining unit that he considers would be appropriate.
- (5) The CAC must give notice of its decision to the parties.]

### Textual Amendments

**F14** Sch. A1 paras. 19-19B substituted (6.4.2005) for Sch. A1 para. 19 by [Employment Relations Act 2004](#) (c. 24), [ss. 4, 59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with [arts. 6-21](#))

### *<sup>F15</sup>Union communications with workers after acceptance of application*

### Textual Amendments

**F15** Sch. A1 paras. 19C-19F and preceding cross-heading inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004](#) (c. 24), [ss. 5\(1\), 59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with [arts. 6-21](#))

- 19C (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC accepts an application under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2) or (4).
- (2) The union (or unions) may apply to the CAC for the appointment of a suitable independent person to handle communications during the initial period between the union (or unions) and the relevant workers.
- (3) In the case of an application under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2), the relevant workers are—

---

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

---

- (a) in relation to any time before an appropriate bargaining unit is agreed by the parties or decided by the CAC, those falling within the proposed bargaining unit, and
    - (b) in relation to any time after an appropriate bargaining unit is so agreed or decided, those falling within the bargaining unit agreed or decided upon.
  - (4) In the case of an application under paragraph 12(4), the relevant workers are those falling within the bargaining unit agreed by the parties.
  - (5) The initial period is the period starting with the day on which the CAC informs the parties under sub-paragraph (7)(b) and ending with the first day on which any of the following occurs—
    - (a) the application under paragraph 11 or 12 is withdrawn;
    - (b) the CAC gives notice to the union (or unions) of a decision under paragraph 20 that the application is invalid;
    - (c) the CAC notifies the union (or unions) of a declaration issued under paragraph 19F(5) or 22(2);
    - (d) the CAC informs the union (or unions) under paragraph 25(9) of the name of the person appointed to conduct a ballot.
  - (6) A person is a suitable independent person if—
    - (a) he satisfies such conditions as may be specified for the purposes of paragraph 25(7)(a) by an order under that provision, or is himself specified for those purposes by such an order, and
    - (b) there are no grounds for believing either that he will carry out any functions arising from his appointment otherwise than competently or that his independence in relation to those functions might reasonably be called into question.
  - (7) On an application under sub-paragraph (2) the CAC must as soon as reasonably practicable—
    - (a) make such an appointment as is mentioned in that sub-paragraph, and
    - (b) inform the parties of the name of the person appointed and the date of his appointment.
  - (8) The person appointed by the CAC is referred to in paragraphs 19D and 19E as “the appointed person”.
- 19D (1) An employer who is informed by the CAC under paragraph 19C(7)(b) must comply with the following duties (so far as it is reasonable to expect him to do so).
- (2) The duties are—
- (a) to give to the CAC, within the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the employer is informed under paragraph 19C(7) (b), the names and home addresses of the relevant workers;
  - (b) if the relevant workers change as a result of an appropriate bargaining unit being agreed by the parties or decided by the CAC, to give to the CAC, within the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the bargaining unit is agreed or the CAC’s decision is notified to the employer, the names and home addresses of those who are now the relevant workers;
  - (c) to give to the CAC, as soon as reasonably practicable, the name and home address of any worker who joins the bargaining unit after the employer has complied with paragraph (a) or (b);

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (d) to inform the CAC, as soon as reasonably practicable, of any worker whose name has been given to the CAC under paragraph (a), (b) or (c) and who ceases to be a relevant worker (otherwise than by reason of a change mentioned in paragraph (b)).
- (3) Nothing in sub-paragraph (2) requires the employer to give information to the CAC after the end of the initial period.
- (4) As soon as reasonably practicable after the CAC receives any information under sub-paragraph (2), it must pass it on to the appointed person.
- 19E (1) During the initial period, the appointed person must if asked to do so by the union (or unions) send to any worker—
  - (a) whose name and home address have been passed on to him under paragraph 19D(4), and
  - (b) who is (so far as the appointed person is aware) still a relevant worker,
 any information supplied by the union (or unions) to the appointed person.
- (2) The costs of the appointed person shall be borne—
  - (a) if the application under paragraph 19C was made by one union, by the union, and
  - (b) if that application was made by more than one union, by the unions in such proportions as they jointly indicate to the appointed person or, in the absence of such an indication, in equal shares.
- (3) The appointed person may send to the union (or each of the unions) a demand stating his costs and the amount of those costs to be borne by the recipient.
- (4) In such a case the recipient must pay the amount stated to the person sending the demand and must do so within the period of 15 working days starting with the day after that on which the demand is received.
- (5) In England and Wales, if the amount stated is not paid in accordance with sub-paragraph (4) it shall, if <sup>F16</sup> the county court ] so orders, be recoverable <sup>F17</sup> under section 85 of the County Courts Act 1984 ] or otherwise as if it were payable under an order of that court.
- (6) <sup>F18</sup> Where a warrant of control is issued under section 85 of the 1984 Act to recover an amount in accordance with sub-paragraph (5), the power conferred by the warrant is exercisable ] , to the same extent and in the same manner as if the union were a body corporate, against any property held in trust for the union other than protected property as defined in section 23(2).
- (7) References to the costs of the appointed person are to—
  - (a) the costs wholly, exclusively and necessarily incurred by the appointed person in connection with handling during the initial period communications between the union (or unions) and the relevant workers,
  - (b) such reasonable amount as the appointed person charges for his services, and
  - (c) such other costs as the union (or unions) agree.

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

### Textual Amendments

- F16** Words in Sch. A1 para. 19E(5) substituted (22.4.2014) by [Crime and Courts Act 2013 \(c. 22\), s. 61\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 52](#); S.I. 2014/954, art. 2(c) (with art. 3) (with transitional provisions and savings in S.I. 2014/956, arts. 3-11)
- F17** Words in Sch. A1 para. 19E(5) substituted (6.4.2014) by [Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007 \(c. 15\), s. 148, Sch. 13 para. 109\(2\)](#) (with s. 89); S.I. 2014/768, art. 2(1)(b)
- F18** Words in Sch. A1 para. 19E(6) substituted (6.4.2014) by [Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007 \(c. 15\), s. 148, Sch. 13 para. 109\(3\)](#) (with s. 89); S.I. 2014/768, art. 2(1)(b)

- 19F (1) If the CAC is satisfied that the employer has failed to fulfil a duty mentioned in paragraph 19D(2), and the initial period has not yet ended, the CAC may order the employer—
- (a) to take such steps to remedy the failure as the CAC considers reasonable and specifies in the order, and
  - (b) to do so within such period as the CAC considers reasonable and specifies in the order;
- and in this paragraph a “remedial order” means an order under this sub-paragraph.
- (2) If the CAC is satisfied that the employer has failed to comply with a remedial order and the initial period has not yet ended, the CAC must as soon as reasonably practicable notify the employer and the union (or unions) that it is satisfied that the employer has failed to comply.
- (3) A remedial order and a notice under sub-paragraph (2) must draw the recipient’s attention to the effect of sub-paragraphs (4) and (5).
- (4) Sub-paragraph (5) applies if—
- (a) the CAC is satisfied that the employer has failed to comply with a remedial order,
  - (b) the parties have agreed an appropriate bargaining unit or the CAC has decided an appropriate bargaining unit,
  - (c) in the case of an application under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2), the CAC, if required to do so, has decided under paragraph 20 that the application is not invalid, and
  - (d) the initial period has not yet ended.
- (5) The CAC may issue a declaration that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the workers constituting the bargaining unit.]

### *Union recognition*

- 20 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC accepts an application under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2),
  - (b) the parties have agreed an appropriate bargaining unit at the end of the appropriate period [<sup>F19</sup>(defined by paragraph 18)], or the CAC has decided an appropriate bargaining unit, and
  - (c) that bargaining unit differs from the proposed bargaining unit.
- (2) Within the decision period the CAC must decide whether the application is invalid within the terms of paragraphs 43 to 50.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (3) In deciding whether the application is invalid, the CAC must consider any evidence which it has been given by the employer or the union (or unions).
- (4) If the CAC decides that the application is invalid—
- (a) the CAC must give notice of its decision to the parties,
  - (b) the CAC must not proceed with the application, and
  - (c) no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
- (5) If the CAC decides that the application is not invalid it must—
- (a) proceed with the application, and
  - (b) give notice to the parties that it is so proceeding.
- (6) The decision period is—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the parties agree an appropriate bargaining unit or the CAC decides an appropriate bargaining unit, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.
- 21 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC accepts an application under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2),
  - (b) the parties have agreed an appropriate bargaining unit at the end of the appropriate period [<sup>F20</sup>(defined by paragraph 18)], or the CAC has decided an appropriate bargaining unit, and
  - (c) that bargaining unit is the same as the proposed bargaining unit.
- (2) This paragraph also applies if the CAC accepts an application under paragraph 12(4).
- (3) The CAC must proceed with the application.

#### Textual Amendments

**F20** Words in Sch. A1 para. 21(1)(b) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(5\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 22 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC proceeds with an application in accordance with paragraph 20 or 21 [<sup>F21</sup>(and makes no declaration under paragraph 19F(5))], and
  - (b) the CAC is satisfied that a majority of the workers constituting the bargaining unit are members of the union (or unions).
- (2) The CAC must issue a declaration that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the workers constituting the bargaining unit.
- (3) But if any of the three qualifying conditions is fulfilled, instead of issuing a declaration under sub-paragraph (2) the CAC must give notice to the parties that it intends to arrange for the holding of a secret ballot in which the workers constituting the bargaining unit are asked whether they want the union (or unions) to conduct collective bargaining on their behalf.
- (4) These are the three qualifying conditions—

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (a) the CAC is satisfied that a ballot should be held in the interests of good industrial relations;
  - [<sup>F22</sup>(b) the CAC has evidence, which it considers to be credible, from a significant number of the union members within the bargaining unit that they do not want the union (or unions) to conduct collective bargaining on their behalf;]
  - (c) membership evidence is produced which leads the CAC to conclude that there are doubts whether a significant number of the union members within the bargaining unit want the union (or unions) to conduct collective bargaining on their behalf.
- (5) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (4)(c) membership evidence is—
- (a) evidence about the circumstances in which union members became members;
  - (b) evidence about the length of time for which union members have been members, in a case where the CAC is satisfied that such evidence should be taken into account.

#### Textual Amendments

- F21** Words in Sch. A1 para. 22(1)(a) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#) {ss. 5(2)}, 59(2)-(4); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)
- F22** Sch. A1 para. 22(4)(b) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 6\(1\)](#), 59(2)-(4); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 23 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC proceeds with an application in accordance with paragraph 20 or 21 [<sup>F23</sup>(and makes no declaration under paragraph 19F(5))], and
  - (b) the CAC is not satisfied that a majority of the workers constituting the bargaining unit are members of the union (or unions).
- (2) The CAC must give notice to the parties that it intends to arrange for the holding of a secret ballot in which the workers constituting the bargaining unit are asked whether they want the union (or unions) to conduct collective bargaining on their behalf.

#### Textual Amendments

- F23** Words in Sch. A1 para. 23(1)(a) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 5\(2\)](#), 59(2)-(4); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 24 (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC gives notice under paragraph 22(3) or 23(2).
- (2) Within the notification period—
- (a) the union (or unions), or
  - (b) the union (or unions) and the employer,
- may notify the CAC that the party making the notification does not (or the parties making the notification do not) want the CAC to arrange for the holding of the ballot.
- (3) If the CAC is so notified—
- (a) it must not arrange for the holding of the ballot,
  - (b) it must inform the parties that it will not arrange for the holding of the ballot, and why, and

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (c) no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
- (4) If the CAC is not so notified it must arrange for the holding of the ballot.
- [<sup>F24</sup>(5) The notification period is, in relation to notification by the union (or unions)—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day on which the union (or last of the unions) receives the CAC’s notice under paragraph 22(3) or 23(2), or
  - (b) such longer period so starting as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice.
- (6) The notification period is, in relation to notification by the union (or unions) and the employer—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day on which the last of the parties receives the CAC’s notice under paragraph 22(3) or 23(2), or
  - (b) such longer period so starting as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice.
- (7) The CAC may give a notice under sub-paragraph (5)(b) or (6)(b) only if the parties have applied jointly to it for the giving of such a notice.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F24** Sch. A1 para. 24(5)-(7) substituted (6.4.2005) for Sch. A1 para. 24(5) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 7, 59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch](#) (with [arts. 6-21](#))

- 25 (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC arranges under paragraph 24 for the holding of a ballot.
- (2) The ballot must be conducted by a qualified independent person appointed by the CAC.
- (3) The ballot must be conducted within—
- (a) the period of 20 working days starting with the day after that on which the qualified independent person is appointed, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may decide.
- (4) The ballot must be conducted—
- (a) at a workplace or workplaces decided by the CAC,
  - (b) by post, or
  - (c) by a combination of the methods described in sub-paragraphs (a) and (b), depending on the CAC’s preference.
- (5) In deciding how the ballot is to be conducted the CAC must take into account—
- (a) the likelihood of the ballot being affected by unfairness or malpractice if it were conducted at a workplace or workplaces;
  - (b) costs and practicality;
  - (c) such other matters as the CAC considers appropriate.
- (6) The CAC may not decide that the ballot is to be conducted as mentioned in sub-paragraph (4)(c) unless there are special factors making such a decision appropriate; and special factors include—



**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (a) factors arising from the location of workers or the nature of their employment;
- (b) factors put to the CAC by the employer or the union (or unions).

<sup>F25</sup>(6A) If the CAC decides that the ballot must (in whole or in part) be conducted at a workplace (or workplaces), it may require arrangements to be made for workers—

- (a) who (but for the arrangements) would be prevented by the CAC's decision from voting by post, and
- (b) who are unable, for reasons relating to those workers as individuals, to cast their votes in the ballot at the workplace (or at any of them),

to be given the opportunity (if they request it far enough in advance of the ballot for this to be practicable) to vote by post; and the CAC's imposing such a requirement is not to be treated for the purposes of sub-paragraph (6) as a decision that the ballot be conducted as mentioned in sub-paragraph (4)(c).]

- (7) A person is a qualified independent person if—
  - (a) he satisfies such conditions as may be specified for the purposes of this paragraph by order of the Secretary of State or is himself so specified, and
  - (b) there are no grounds for believing either that he will carry out any functions conferred on him in relation to the ballot otherwise than competently or that his independence in relation to the ballot might reasonably be called into question.
- (8) An order under sub-paragraph (7)(a) shall be made by statutory instrument subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (9) As soon as is reasonably practicable after the CAC is required under paragraph 24 to arrange for the holding of a ballot it must inform the parties—
  - (a) that it is so required;
  - (b) of the name of the person appointed to conduct the ballot and the date of his appointment;
  - (c) of the period within which the ballot must be conducted;
  - (d) whether the ballot is to be conducted by post or at a workplace or workplaces;
  - (e) of the workplace or workplaces concerned (if the ballot is to be conducted at a workplace or workplaces).

#### Textual Amendments

**F25** Sch. A1 para. 25(6A) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 8\(1\), 59\(2\)-\(4\); S.I. 2005/872, art. 4, Sch.](#) (with arts. 6-21)

- 26 (1) An employer who is informed by the CAC under paragraph 25(9) must comply with the following <sup>F26</sup>five] duties.
- (2) The first duty is to co-operate generally, in connection with the ballot, with the union (or unions) and the person appointed to conduct the ballot; and the second and third duties are not to prejudice the generality of this.
  - (3) The second duty is to give to the union (or unions) such access to the workers constituting the bargaining unit as is reasonable to enable the union (or unions) to inform the workers of the object of the ballot and to seek their support and their opinions on the issues involved.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (4) The third duty is to do the following (so far as it is reasonable to expect the employer to do so)—
- (a) to give to the CAC, within the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the employer is informed under paragraph 25(9), the names and home addresses of the workers constituting the bargaining unit;
  - (b) to give to the CAC, as soon as is reasonably practicable, the name and home address of any worker who joins the unit after the employer has complied with paragraph (a);
  - (c) to inform the CAC, as soon as is reasonably practicable, of any worker whose name has been given to the CAC under paragraph [F27]19D or paragraph (a) or (b) of this sub-paragraph and] who ceases to be within the unit.
- [F28(4A) The fourth duty is to refrain from making any offer to any or all of the workers constituting the bargaining unit which—
- (a) has or is likely to have the effect of inducing any or all of them not to attend any relevant meeting between the union (or unions) and the workers constituting the bargaining unit, and
  - (b) is not reasonable in the circumstances.
- (4B) The fifth duty is to refrain from taking or threatening to take any action against a worker solely or mainly on the grounds that he—
- (a) attended or took part in any relevant meeting between the union (or unions) and the workers constituting the bargaining unit, or
  - (b) indicated his intention to attend or take part in such a meeting.
- (4C) A meeting is a relevant meeting in relation to a worker for the purposes of sub-paragraphs (4A) and (4B) if—
- (a) it is organised in accordance with any agreement reached concerning the second duty or as a result of a step ordered to be taken under paragraph 27 to remedy a failure to comply with that duty, and
  - (b) it is one which the employer is, by such an agreement or order as is mentioned in paragraph (a), required to permit the worker to attend.
- (4D) Without prejudice to the generality of the second duty imposed by this paragraph, an employer is to be taken to have failed to comply with that duty if—
- (a) he refuses a request for a meeting between the union (or unions) and any or all of the workers constituting the bargaining unit to be held in the absence of the employer or any representative of his (other than one who has been invited to attend the meeting) and it is not reasonable in the circumstances for him to do so,
  - (b) he or a representative of his attends such a meeting without having been invited to do so,
  - (c) he seeks to record or otherwise be informed of the proceedings at any such meeting and it is not reasonable in the circumstances for him to do so, or
  - (d) he refuses to give an undertaking that he will not seek to record or otherwise be informed of the proceedings at any such meeting unless it is reasonable in the circumstances for him to do either of those things.
- (4E) The fourth and fifth duties do not confer any rights on a worker; but that does not affect any other right which a worker may have.]

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

[<sup>F29</sup>(4F) Sub-paragraph (4)(a) does not apply to names and addresses that the employer has already given to the CAC under paragraph 19D.

(4G) Where (because of sub-paragraph (4F)) the employer does not have to comply with sub-paragraph (4)(a), the reference in sub-paragraph (4)(b) to the time when the employer complied with sub-paragraph (4)(a) is to be read as a reference to the time when the employer is informed under paragraph 25(9).

(4H) If—

- (a) a person was appointed on an application under paragraph 19C, and
- (b) the person appointed to conduct the ballot is not that person,

the CAC must, as soon as is reasonably practicable, pass on to the person appointed to conduct the ballot the names and addresses given to it under paragraph 19D.]

(5) As soon as is reasonably practicable after the CAC receives any information under sub-paragraph (4) it must pass it on to the person appointed to conduct the ballot.

(6) If asked to do so by the union (or unions) the person appointed to conduct the ballot must send to any worker—

- (a) whose name and home address have been [<sup>F30</sup>passed on to him under paragraph 19D or this paragraph], and
- (b) who is still within the unit (so far as the person so appointed is aware), any information supplied by the union (or unions) to the person so appointed.

(7) The duty under sub-paragraph (6) does not apply unless the union bears (or unions bear) the cost of sending the information.

[<sup>F31</sup>(8) Each of the powers specified in sub-paragraph (9) shall be taken to include power to issue Codes of Practice—

- (a) about reasonable access for the purposes of sub-paragraph (3), and
- (b) about the fourth duty imposed by this paragraph.

(9) The powers are—

- (a) the power of ACAS under section 199(1);
- (b) the power of the Secretary of State under section 203(1)(a).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F26** Word in Sch. A1 para. 26(1) substituted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 9(2)**, 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2005/2419, **art. 3(a)** (with arts. 5-7)
- F27** Words in Sch A1 para. 26(4)(c) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 5(3)**, 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2005/872, **art. 4**, Sch (with arts 6-21)
- F28** Sch. A1 para 26(4A)-(4E) inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 25\)](#), **ss. 9(3)**, 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2005/2419, **art. 3(a)** (with arts. 5-7)
- F29** Sch. A1 para. 26(4F)-(4H) inserted (6.4.2005) by virtue of [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 5(4)**, 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2005/872, **art. 4**, Sch (with arts. 6-21)
- F30** Words in Sch. A1 para. 26(6) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 5(5)**, 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2005/872, **art. 4**, Sch. (with arts 6-21)
- F31** Sch. A1 para. 26(8)-(9) substituted for Sch. A1 para. 26(8) (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 9(4)**, 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2005/2419, **art. 3(a)** (with arts. 5-7)

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- 27 (1) If the CAC is satisfied that the employer has failed to fulfil any of the <sup>F32</sup>duties imposed on him] by paragraph 26, and the ballot has not been held, the CAC may order the employer—
- (a) to take such steps to remedy the failure as the CAC considers reasonable and specifies in the order, and
  - (b) to do so within such period as the CAC considers reasonable and specifies in the order.
- (2) If the CAC is satisfied that the employer has failed to comply with an order under sub-paragraph (1), and the ballot has not been held, the CAC may issue a declaration that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the bargaining unit.
- (3) If the CAC issues a declaration under sub-paragraph (2) it shall take steps to cancel the holding of the ballot; and if the ballot is held it shall have no effect.

#### Textual Amendments

**F32** Words in Sch. A1 para. 27(1) substituted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 9\(5\), 59\(2\)-\(4\); S.I. 2005/2419, art. 3\(a\)](#) (with arts. 5-7)

- <sup>F33</sup>27A(1) Each of the parties informed by the CAC under paragraph 25(9) must refrain from using any unfair practice.
- (2) A party uses an unfair practice if, with a view to influencing the result of the ballot, the party—
- (a) offers to pay money or give money's worth to a worker entitled to vote in the ballot in return for the worker's agreement to vote in a particular way or to abstain from voting,
  - (b) makes an outcome-specific offer to a worker entitled to vote in the ballot,
  - (c) coerces or attempts to coerce a worker entitled to vote in the ballot to disclose—
    - (i) whether he intends to vote or to abstain from voting in the ballot, or
    - (ii) how he intends to vote, or how he has voted, in the ballot,
  - (d) dismisses or threatens to dismiss a worker,
  - (e) takes or threatens to take disciplinary action against a worker,
  - (f) subjects or threatens to subject a worker to any other detriment, or
  - (g) uses or attempts to use undue influence on a worker entitled to vote in the ballot.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(b) an “outcome-specific offer” is an offer to pay money or give money's worth which—
- (a) is conditional on the issuing by the CAC of a declaration that—
    - (i) the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the bargaining unit, or
    - (ii) the union is (or unions are) not entitled to be so recognised, and
  - (b) is not conditional on anything which is done or occurs as a result of the declaration in question.
- (4) The duty imposed by this paragraph does not confer any rights on a worker; but that does not affect any other right which a worker may have.

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (5) Each of the following powers shall be taken to include power to issue Codes of Practice about unfair practices for the purposes of this paragraph—
- (a) the power of ACAS under section 199(1);
  - (b) the power of the Secretary of State under section 203(1)(a).

#### Textual Amendments

**F33** Sch. A1 para. 27A-27F inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 10(1)**, 59(2)-(4); [S.I. 2005/2419](#), **art. 3(a)** (with [arts. 5-7](#))

- 27B (1) A party may complain to the CAC that another party has failed to comply with paragraph 27A.
- (2) A complaint under sub-paragraph (1) must be made on or before the first working day after—
- (a) the date of the ballot, or
  - (b) if votes may be cast in the ballot on more than one day, the last of those days.
- (3) Within the decision period the CAC must decide whether the complaint is well-founded.
- (4) A complaint is well-founded if—
- (a) the CAC finds that the party complained against used an unfair practice, and
  - (b) the CAC is satisfied that the use of that practice changed or was likely to change, in the case of a worker entitled to vote in the ballot—
    - (i) his intention to vote or to abstain from voting,
    - (ii) his intention to vote in a particular way, or
    - (iii) how he voted.
- (5) The decision period is—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the complaint under sub-paragraph (1) was received by the CAC, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by a notice containing reasons for the extension.
- (6) If, at the beginning of the decision period, the ballot has not begun, the CAC may by notice to the parties and the qualified independent person postpone the date on which it is to begin until a date which falls after the end of the decision period.

#### Textual Amendments

**F33** Sch. A1 para. 27A-27F inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 10(1)**, 59(2)-(4); [S.I. 2005/2419](#), **art. 3(a)** (with [arts. 5-7](#))

- 27C (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC decides that a complaint under paragraph 27B is well-founded.
- (2) The CAC must, as soon as is reasonably practicable, issue a declaration to that effect.
- (3) The CAC may do either or both of the following—
- (a) order the party concerned to take any action specified in the order within such period as may be so specified, or

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) give notice to the employer and to the union (or unions) that it intends to arrange for the holding of a secret ballot in which the workers constituting the bargaining unit are asked whether they want the union (or unions) to conduct collective bargaining on their behalf.
- (4) The CAC may give an order or a notice under sub-paragraph (3) either at the same time as it issues the declaration under sub-paragraph (2) or at any other time before it acts under paragraph 29.
- (5) The action specified in an order under sub-paragraph (3)(a) shall be such as the CAC considers reasonable in order to mitigate the effect of the failure of the party concerned to comply with the duty imposed by paragraph 27A.
- (6) The CAC may give more than one order under sub-paragraph (3)(a).

#### Textual Amendments

**F33** Sch. A1 para. 27A-27F inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. **10(1)**, 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2005/2419, **art. 3(a)** (with arts. 5-7)

- 27D (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC issues a declaration under paragraph 27C(2) and the declaration states that the unfair practice used consisted of or included—
- (a) the use of violence, or
  - (b) the dismissal of a union official.
- (2) This paragraph also applies if the CAC has made an order under paragraph 27C(3)
- (a) and—
    - (a) it is satisfied that the party subject to the order has failed to comply with it, or
    - (b) it makes another declaration under paragraph 27C(2) in relation to a complaint against that party.
  - (3) If the party concerned is the employer, the CAC may issue a declaration that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the bargaining unit.
  - (4) If the party concerned is a union, the CAC may issue a declaration that the union is (or unions are) not entitled to be so recognised.
  - (5) The powers conferred by this paragraph are in addition to those conferred by paragraph 27C(3).

#### Textual Amendments

**F33** Sch. A1 para. 27A-27F inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. **10(1)**, 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2005/2419, **art. 3(a)** (with arts. 5-7)

- 27E (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC issues a declaration that a complaint under paragraph 27B is well-founded and—
- (a) gives a notice under paragraph 27C(3)(b), or
  - (b) issues a declaration under paragraph 27D.
- (2) If the ballot in connection with which the complaint was made has not been held, the CAC shall take steps to cancel it.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(3) If that ballot is held, it shall have no effect.

#### Textual Amendments

**F33** Sch. A1 para. 27A-27F inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 10(1)**, 59(2)-(4); [S.I. 2005/2419](#), **art. 3(a)** (with [arts. 5-7](#))

- 27F (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC gives a notice under paragraph 27C(3)(b).
- (2) Paragraphs 24 to 29 apply in relation to that notice as they apply in relation to a notice given under paragraph 22(3) or 23(2) but with the modifications specified in sub-paragraphs (3) to (6).
- (3) In each of sub-paragraphs (5)(a) and (6)(a) of paragraph 24 for “10 working days” substitute 5 working days.
- (4) An employer’s duty under paragraph (a) of paragraph 26(4) is limited to—
- (a) giving the CAC the names and home addresses of any workers in the bargaining unit which have not previously been given to it in accordance with that duty;
  - (b) giving the CAC the names and home addresses of those workers who have joined the bargaining unit since he last gave the CAC information in accordance with that duty;
  - (c) informing the CAC of any change to the name or home address of a worker whose name and home address have previously been given to the CAC in accordance with that duty; and
  - (d) informing the CAC of any worker whose name had previously been given to it in accordance with that duty who has ceased to be within the bargaining unit.
- (5) Any order given under paragraph 27(1) or 27C(3)(a) for the purposes of the cancelled or ineffectual ballot shall have effect (to the extent that the CAC specifies in a notice to the parties) as if it were made for the purposes of the ballot to which the notice under paragraph 27C(3)(b) relates.
- (6) The gross costs of the ballot shall be borne by such of the parties and in such proportions as the CAC may determine and, accordingly, sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) of paragraph 28 shall be omitted and the reference in sub-paragraph (4) of that paragraph to the employer and the union (or each of the unions) shall be construed as a reference to the party or parties which bear the costs in accordance with the CAC’s determination.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F33** Sch. A1 para. 27A-27F inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 10(1)**, 59(2)-(4); [S.I. 2005/2419](#), **art. 3(a)** (with [arts. 5-7](#))

- 28 (1) This paragraph applies if the holding of a ballot has been arranged under paragraph 24 whether or not it has been cancelled.
- (2) The gross costs of the ballot shall be borne—
- (a) as to half, by the employer, and

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) as to half, by the union (or unions).
- (3) If there is more than one union they shall bear their half of the gross costs—
  - (a) in such proportions as they jointly indicate to the person appointed to conduct the ballot, or
  - (b) in the absence of such an indication, in equal shares.
- (4) The person appointed to conduct the ballot may send to the employer and the union (or each of the unions) a demand stating—
  - (a) the gross costs of the ballot, and
  - (b) the amount of the gross costs to be borne by the recipient.
- (5) In such a case the recipient must pay the amount stated to the person sending the demand, and must do so within the period of 15 working days starting with the day after that on which the demand is received.
- (6) In England and Wales, if the amount stated is not paid in accordance with sub-paragraph (5) it shall, if <sup>F34</sup> the county court ] so orders, be recoverable <sup>F35</sup> under section 85 of the County Courts Act 1984 ] or otherwise as if it were payable under an order of that court.
- <sup>F36</sup>(6A) <sup>F37</sup> Where a warrant of control is issued under section 85 of the 1984 Act to recover an amount in accordance with sub-paragraph (6), the power conferred by the warrant is exercisable ] , to the same extent and in the same manner as if the union were a body corporate, against any property held in trust for the union other than protected property as defined in section 23(2).]
- (7) References to the costs of the ballot are to—
  - (a) the costs wholly, exclusively and necessarily incurred in connection with the ballot by the person appointed to conduct it,
  - (b) such reasonable amount as the person appointed to conduct the ballot charges for his services, and
  - (c) such other costs as the employer and the union (or unions) agree.

#### Textual Amendments

**F34** Words in Sch. A1 para. 28(6) substituted (22.4.2014) by [Crime and Courts Act 2013 \(c. 22\), s. 61\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 52](#); S.I. 2014/954, art. 2(c) (with art. 3) (with transitional provisions and savings in S.I. 2014/956, arts. 3-11)

**F35** Words in Sch. A1 para. 28(6) substituted (6.4.2014) by [Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007 \(c. 15\), s. 148, Sch. 13 para. 110\(2\)](#) (with s. 89); S.I. 2014/768, art. 2(1)(b)

**F36** Sch. A1 para. 28(6A) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 57\(1\), 59\(2\)-\(4\), Sch. 1 para. 23\(6\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, art. 4, Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

**F37** Words in Sch. A1 para. 28(6A) substituted (6.4.2014) by [Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007 \(c. 15\), s. 148, Sch. 13 para. 110\(3\)](#) (with s. 89); S.I. 2014/768, art. 2(1)(b)

- 29 (1) As soon as is reasonably practicable after the CAC is informed of the result of a ballot by the person conducting it, the CAC must act under this paragraph.

<sup>F38</sup>(1A) The duty in sub-paragraph (1) does not apply if the CAC gives a notice under paragraph 27C(3)(b).]

- (2) The CAC must inform the employer and the union (or unions) of the result of the ballot.



**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (3) If the result is that the union is (or unions are) supported by—
  - (a) a majority of the workers voting, and
  - (b) at least 40 per cent of the workers constituting the bargaining unit,the CAC must issue a declaration that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the bargaining unit.
- (4) If the result is otherwise the CAC must issue a declaration that the union is (or unions are) not entitled to be so recognised.
- (5) The Secretary of State may by order amend sub-paragraph (3) so as to specify a different degree of support; and different provision may be made for different circumstances.
- (6) An order under sub-paragraph (5) shall be made by statutory instrument.
- (7) No such order shall be made unless a draft of it has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.

#### Textual Amendments

**F38** Sch. A1 para. 29(1A) inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 10\(2\), 59\(2\)-\(4\); S.I. 2005/2419, art. 3\(a\)](#) (with arts. 5-7)

- 30 (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC issues a declaration under this Part of this Schedule that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a bargaining unit.
- (2) The parties may in the negotiation period conduct negotiations with a view to agreeing a method by which they will conduct collective bargaining.
- (3) If no agreement is made in the negotiation period the employer or the union (or unions) may apply to the CAC for assistance.
- (4) The negotiation period is—
  - (a) the period of 30 working days starting with the start day, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the parties may from time to time agree.
- (5) The start day is the day after that on which the parties are notified of the declaration.
- 31 (1) This paragraph applies if an application for assistance is made to the CAC under paragraph 30.
- (2) The CAC must try to help the parties to reach in the agreement period an agreement on a method by which they will conduct collective bargaining.
- (3) If at the end of the agreement period the parties have not made such an agreement the CAC must specify to the parties the method by which they are to conduct collective bargaining.
- (4) Any method specified under sub-paragraph (3) is to have effect as if it were contained in a legally enforceable contract made by the parties.
- (5) But if the parties agree in writing—
  - (a) that sub-paragraph (4) shall not apply, or shall not apply to particular parts of the method specified by the CAC, or

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) to vary or replace the method specified by the CAC, the written agreement shall have effect as a legally enforceable contract made by the parties.
- (6) Specific performance shall be the only remedy available for breach of anything which is a legally enforceable contract by virtue of this paragraph.
- (7) If at any time before a specification is made under sub-paragraph (3) the parties jointly apply to the CAC requesting it to stop taking steps under this paragraph, the CAC must comply with the request.
- (8) The agreement period is—
  - (a) the period of 20 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC receives the application under paragraph 30, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may decide with the consent of the parties.

*Method not carried out*

- 32 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC issues a declaration under this Part of this Schedule that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a bargaining unit,
  - (b) the parties agree a method by which they will conduct collective bargaining, and
  - (c) one or more of the parties fails to carry out the agreement.
- (2) The [<sup>F39</sup>employer or the union (or unions)] may apply to the CAC for assistance.
- (3) Paragraph 31 applies as if paragraph 30 (in each place) read paragraph 30 or paragraph 32.

**Textual Amendments**

**F39** Words in Sch. A1 para. 32(2) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(7\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

*General provisions about admissibility*

- 33 An application under paragraph 11 or 12 is not admissible unless—
- (a) it is made in such form as the CAC specifies, and
  - (b) it is supported by such documents as the CAC specifies.
- 34 An application under paragraph 11 or 12 is not admissible unless the union gives (or unions give) to the employer—
- (a) notice of the application, and
  - (b) a copy of the application and any documents supporting it.
- 35 (1) An application under paragraph 11 or 12 is not admissible if the CAC is satisfied that there is already in force a collective agreement under which a union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of any workers falling within the relevant bargaining unit.

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (2) But sub-paragraph (1) does not apply to an application under paragraph 11 or 12 if—
- (a) the union (or unions) recognised under the collective agreement and the union (or unions) making the application under paragraph 11 or 12 are the same, and
  - (b) the matters in respect of which the union is (or unions are) entitled to conduct collective bargaining do not include <sup>[F40]</sup>all of the following: pay, hours and holidays (“the core topics”) ].
- (3) A declaration of recognition which is the subject of a declaration under paragraph 83(2) must for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) be treated as ceasing to have effect to the extent specified in paragraph 83(2) on the making of the declaration under paragraph 83(2).
- (4) In applying sub-paragraph (1) an agreement for recognition (the agreement in question) must be ignored if—
- (a) the union does not have (or none of the unions has) a certificate <sup>[F41]</sup>of independence],
  - (b) at some time there was an agreement (the old agreement) between the employer and the union under which the union (whether alone or with other unions) was recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a group of workers which was the same or substantially the same as the group covered by the agreement in question, and
  - (c) the old agreement ceased to have effect in the period of three years ending with the date of the agreement in question.
- (5) It is for the CAC to decide whether one group of workers is the same or substantially the same as another, but in deciding the CAC may take account of the views of any person it believes has an interest in the matter.
- (6) The relevant bargaining unit is—
- (a) the proposed bargaining unit, where the application is under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2);
  - (b) the agreed bargaining unit, where the application is under paragraph 12(4).

#### Textual Amendments

- F40** Words in Sch. A1 para. 35(2)(b) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 11, 59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2004/872, art. 4, Sch.](#) (with arts. 6-21)
- F41** Words in Sch. A1 para. 35(4)(a) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 50\(6\), 59\(2\)-\(4\)](#), [S.I. 2005/872, {art. 4}](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 36 (1) An application under paragraph 11 or 12 is not admissible unless the CAC decides that—
- (a) members of the union (or unions) constitute at least 10 per cent of the workers constituting the relevant bargaining unit, and
  - (b) a majority of the workers constituting the relevant bargaining unit would be likely to favour recognition of the union (or unions) as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the bargaining unit.
- (2) The relevant bargaining unit is—
- (a) the proposed bargaining unit, where the application is under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2);

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) the agreed bargaining unit, where the application is under paragraph 12(4).
- (3) The CAC must give reasons for the decision.
- 37 (1) This paragraph applies to an application made by more than one union under paragraph 11 or 12.
- (2) The application is not admissible unless—
  - (a) the unions show that they will co-operate with each other in a manner likely to secure and maintain stable and effective collective bargaining arrangements, and
  - (b) the unions show that, if the employer wishes, they will enter into arrangements under which collective bargaining is conducted by the unions acting together on behalf of the workers constituting the relevant bargaining unit.
- (3) The relevant bargaining unit is—
  - (a) the proposed bargaining unit, where the application is under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2);
  - (b) the agreed bargaining unit, where the application is under paragraph [F42]12(4)].

#### Textual Amendments

**F42** Words in Sch. A1 para. 37(3)(b) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(8\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 38 (1) This paragraph applies if—
  - (a) the CAC accepts a relevant application relating to a bargaining unit or proceeds under paragraph 20 with an application relating to a bargaining unit,
  - (b) the application has not been withdrawn,
  - (c) no notice has been given under paragraph 17(2),
  - (d) the CAC has not issued a declaration under paragraph [F43]19F(5), 22(2), 27(2), 27D(3), 27D(4),] 29(3) or 29(4) in relation to that bargaining unit, and
  - (e) no notification has been made under paragraph 24(2).
- (2) Another relevant application is not admissible if—
  - (a) at least one worker falling within the relevant bargaining unit also falls within the bargaining unit referred to in sub-paragraph (1), and
  - (b) the application is made by a union (or unions) other than the union (or unions) which made the application referred to in sub-paragraph (1).
- (3) A relevant application is an application under paragraph 11 or 12.
- (4) The relevant bargaining unit is—
  - (a) the proposed bargaining unit, where the application is under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2);
  - (b) the agreed bargaining unit, where the application is under paragraph 12(4).

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

### Textual Amendments

**F43** Words in Sch. A1 para. 38(1)(d) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(9\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 39 (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC accepts a relevant application relating to a bargaining unit or proceeds under paragraph 20 with an application relating to a bargaining unit.
- (2) Another relevant application is not admissible if—
- (a) the application is made within the period of 3 years starting with the day after that on which the CAC gave notice of acceptance of the application mentioned in sub-paragraph (1),
  - (b) the relevant bargaining unit is the same or substantially the same as the bargaining unit mentioned in sub-paragraph (1), and
  - (c) the application is made by the union (or unions) which made the application mentioned in sub-paragraph (1).
- (3) A relevant application is an application under paragraph 11 or 12.
- (4) The relevant bargaining unit is—
- (a) the proposed bargaining unit, where the application is under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2);
  - (b) the agreed bargaining unit, where the application is under paragraph 12(4).
- (5) This paragraph does not apply if paragraph 40 or 41 applies.
- 40 (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC issues a declaration under paragraph [<sup>F44</sup>27D(4) or] 29(4) that a union is (or unions are) not entitled to be recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a bargaining unit; and this is so whether the ballot concerned is [<sup>F45</sup>arranged] under this Part or Part III of this Schedule.
- (2) An application under paragraph 11 or 12 is not admissible if—
- (a) the application is made within the period of 3 years starting with the day after that on which the declaration was issued,
  - (b) the relevant bargaining unit is the same or substantially the same as the bargaining unit mentioned in sub-paragraph (1), and
  - (c) the application is made by the union (or unions) which made the application leading to the declaration.
- (3) The relevant bargaining unit is—
- (a) the proposed bargaining unit, where the application is under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2);
  - (b) the agreed bargaining unit, where the application is under paragraph 12(4).

### Textual Amendments

**F44** Words in Sch. A1 para. 40(1) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(10\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

**F45** Word in Sch. A1 para. 40(1) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(10\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- 41 (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC issues a declaration under paragraph [F46 119D(4), 119H(5) or] 121(3) that bargaining arrangements are to cease to have effect; and this is so whether the ballot concerned is [F47 arranged] under Part IV or Part V of this Schedule.
- (2) An application under paragraph 11 or 12 is not admissible if—
- (a) the application is made within the period of 3 years starting with the day after that on which the declaration was issued,
  - (b) the relevant bargaining unit is the same or substantially the same as the bargaining unit to which the bargaining arrangements mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) relate, and
  - (c) the application is made by the union which was a party (or unions which were parties) to the proceedings leading to the declaration.
- (3) The relevant bargaining unit is—
- (a) the proposed bargaining unit, where the application is under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2);
  - (b) the agreed bargaining unit, where the application is under paragraph 12(4).

#### Textual Amendments

- F46** Words in Sch. A1 para. 41(1) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(1\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)
- F47** Word in Sch. A1 para. 41(1) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(1\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 42 (1) This paragraph applies for the purposes of paragraphs 39 to 41.
- (2) It is for the CAC to decide whether one bargaining unit is the same or substantially the same as another, but in deciding the CAC may take account of the views of any person it believes has an interest in the matter.
- 43 (1) Paragraphs 44 to 50 apply if the CAC has to decide under paragraph 20 whether an application is valid.
- (2) In those paragraphs—
- (a) references to the application in question are to that application, and
  - (b) references to the relevant bargaining unit are to the bargaining unit agreed by the parties or decided by the CAC.
- 44 (1) The application in question is invalid if the CAC is satisfied that there is already in force a collective agreement under which a union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of any workers falling within the relevant bargaining unit.
- (2) But sub-paragraph (1) does not apply to the application in question if—
- (a) the union (or unions) recognised under the collective agreement and the union (or unions) making the application in question are the same, and
  - (b) the matters in respect of which the union is (or unions are) entitled to conduct collective bargaining do not include [F48 all of the following: pay, hours and holidays (“the core topics”)].
- (3) A declaration of recognition which is the subject of a declaration under paragraph 83(2) must for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) be treated as ceasing to have effect

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

to the extent specified in paragraph 83(2) on the making of the declaration under paragraph 83(2).

- (4) In applying sub-paragraph (1) an agreement for recognition (the agreement in question) must be ignored if—
- (a) the union does not have (or none of the unions has) a certificate [<sup>F49</sup>of independence],
  - (b) at some time there was an agreement (the old agreement) between the employer and the union under which the union (whether alone or with other unions) was recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a group of workers which was the same or substantially the same as the group covered by the agreement in question, and
  - (c) the old agreement ceased to have effect in the period of three years ending with the date of the agreement in question.
- (5) It is for the CAC to decide whether one group of workers is the same or substantially the same as another, but in deciding the CAC may take account of the views of any person it believes has an interest in the matter.

#### Textual Amendments

- F48** Words in Sch. A1 para. 44(2)(b) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 11](#), [59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with [arts. 6-21](#))
- F49** Words in Sch. A1 para. 44(4)(a) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 50\(6\)](#), [59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch (with [arts. 6-21](#))

- 45 The application in question is invalid unless the CAC decides that—
- (a) members of the union (or unions) constitute at least 10 per cent of the workers constituting the relevant bargaining unit, and
  - (b) a majority of the workers constituting the relevant bargaining unit would be likely to favour recognition of the union (or unions) as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the bargaining unit.
- 46 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC accepts an application under paragraph 11 or 12 relating to a bargaining unit or proceeds under paragraph 20 with an application relating to a bargaining unit,
  - (b) the application has not been withdrawn,
  - (c) no notice has been given under paragraph 17(2),
  - (d) the CAC has not issued a declaration under paragraph [<sup>F50</sup>19F(5), 22(2), 27(2), 27D(3), 27D(4),] 29(3) or 29(4) in relation to that bargaining unit, and
  - (e) no notification has been made under paragraph 24(2).
- (2) The application in question is invalid if—
- (a) at least one worker falling within the relevant bargaining unit also falls within the bargaining unit referred to in sub-paragraph (1), and
  - (b) the application in question is made by a union (or unions) other than the union (or unions) which made the application referred to in sub-paragraph (1).

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

### Textual Amendments

**F50** Words in Sch. A1 para. 46(1)(d) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(12\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 47 (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC accepts an application under paragraph 11 or 12 relating to a bargaining unit or proceeds under paragraph 20 with an application relating to a bargaining unit.
- (2) The application in question is invalid if—
- (a) the application is made within the period of 3 years starting with the day after that on which the CAC gave notice of acceptance of the application mentioned in sub-paragraph (1),
  - (b) the relevant bargaining unit is the same or substantially the same as the bargaining unit mentioned in sub-paragraph (1), and
  - (c) the application is made by the union (or unions) which made the application mentioned in sub-paragraph (1).
- (3) This paragraph does not apply if paragraph 48 or 49 applies.
- 48 (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC issues a declaration under paragraph [<sup>F51</sup>27D(4) or] 29(4) that a union is (or unions are) not entitled to be recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a bargaining unit; and this is so whether the ballot concerned is [<sup>F52</sup>arranged] under this Part or Part III of this Schedule.
- (2) The application in question is invalid if—
- (a) the application is made within the period of 3 years starting with the date of the declaration,
  - (b) the relevant bargaining unit is the same or substantially the same as the bargaining unit mentioned in sub-paragraph (1), and
  - (c) the application is made by the union (or unions) which made the application leading to the declaration.

### Textual Amendments

**F51** Words in Sch. A1 para. 48(1) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(13\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

**F52** Words in Sch. A1 para. 48(1) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(13\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 49 (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC issues a declaration under paragraph [<sup>F53</sup>119D(4), 119H(5) or] 121(3) that bargaining arrangements are to cease to have effect; and this is so whether the ballot concerned is [<sup>F54</sup>arranged] under Part IV or Part V of this Schedule.
- (2) The application in question is invalid if—
- (a) the application is made within the period of 3 years starting with the day after that on which the declaration was issued,
  - (b) the relevant bargaining unit is the same or substantially the same as the bargaining unit to which the bargaining arrangements mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) relate, and



**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (c) the application is made by the union which was a party (or unions which were parties) to the proceedings leading to the declaration.

#### Textual Amendments

- F53** Words in Sch. A1 para. 49(1) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(14\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. 1 (with arts. 6-21)
- F54** Words in Sch. A1 para. 49(1) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(14\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. 1 (with arts. 6-21)

- 50 (1) This paragraph applies for the purposes of paragraphs 47 to 49.
- (2) It is for the CAC to decide whether one bargaining unit is the same or substantially the same as another, but in deciding the CAC may take account of the views of any person it believes has an interest in the matter.

#### *Competing applications*

- 51 (1) For the purposes of this paragraph—
- (a) the original application is the application referred to in paragraph 38(1) or 46(1), and
- (b) the competing application is the other application referred to in paragraph 38(2) or the application in question referred to in paragraph 46(2);
- but an application cannot be an original application unless it was made under paragraph 11(2) or 12(2).
- (2) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC decides that the competing application is not admissible by reason of paragraph 38 or is invalid by reason of paragraph 46,
- (b) at the time the decision is made the parties to the original application have not agreed the appropriate bargaining unit under paragraph 18, and the CAC has not decided the appropriate bargaining unit under paragraph 19 [F55 or 19A], in relation to the application, and
- (c) the 10 per cent test (within the meaning given by paragraph 14) is satisfied with regard to the competing application.
- (3) In such a case—
- (a) the CAC must cancel the original application,
- (b) the CAC must give notice to the parties to the application that it has been cancelled,
- (c) no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule in relation to the application, and
- (d) the application shall be treated as if it had never been admissible.

#### Textual Amendments

- F55** Words in Sch. A1 para. 51(2)(b) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(15\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. 1 (with arts. 6-21)

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

## PART II

### VOLUNTARY RECOGNITION

#### *Agreements for recognition*

- 52 (1) This paragraph applies for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule.
- (2) An agreement is an agreement for recognition if the following conditions are fulfilled in relation to it—
- (a) the agreement is made in the permitted period between a union (or unions) and an employer in consequence of a request made under paragraph 4 and valid within the terms of paragraphs 5 to 9;
  - (b) under the agreement the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a group or groups of workers employed by the employer;
  - (c) if sub-paragraph (5) applies to the agreement, it is satisfied.
- (3) The permitted period is the period which begins with the day on which the employer receives the request and ends when the first of the following occurs—
- (a) the union withdraws (or unions withdraw) the request;
  - (b) the union withdraws (or unions withdraw) any application under paragraph 11 or 12 made in consequence of the request;
  - (c) the CAC gives notice of a decision under paragraph 14(7) which precludes it from accepting such an application under paragraph 11 or 12;
  - (d) the CAC gives notice under paragraph 15(4)(a) or 20(4)(a) in relation to such an application under paragraph 11 or 12;
  - (e) the parties give notice to the CAC under paragraph 17(2) in relation to such an application under paragraph 11 or 12;
  - (f) the CAC issues a declaration under paragraph [F56]19F(5) or] 22(2) in consequence of such an application under paragraph 11 or 12;
  - (g) the CAC is notified under paragraph 24(2) in relation to such an application under paragraph 11 or 12;
  - (h) the last day of the notification period ends (the notification period being that defined by paragraph [F57]24(6)] and arising from such an application under paragraph 11 or 12);
  - (i) the CAC is required under paragraph 51(3) to cancel such an application under paragraph 11 or 12.
- (4) Sub-paragraph (5) applies to an agreement if—
- (a) at the time it is made the CAC has received an application under paragraph 11 or 12 in consequence of the request mentioned in sub-paragraph (2), and
  - (b) the CAC has not decided whether the application is admissible or it has decided that it is admissible.
- (5) This sub-paragraph is satisfied if, in relation to the application under paragraph 11 or 12, the parties give notice to the CAC under paragraph 17 before the final event (as defined in paragraph 17) occurs.

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

### Textual Amendments

- F56** Words in Sch. A1 para. 52(3)(f) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(16\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. 1 (with arts. 6-21)
- F57** Words in Sch. A1 para. 52(3)(h) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(16\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. 1 (with arts. 6-21)

### *Other interpretation*

- 53 (1) This paragraph applies for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule.
- (2) In relation to an agreement for recognition, references to the bargaining unit are to the group of workers (or the groups taken together) to which the agreement for recognition relates.
- (3) In relation to an agreement for recognition, references to the parties are to the union (or unions) and the employer who are parties to the agreement.
- 54 (1) This paragraph applies for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule.
- (2) The meaning of collective bargaining given by section 178(1) shall not apply.
- (3) Except in paragraph 63(2), in relation to an agreement for recognition references to collective bargaining are to negotiations relating to the matters in respect of which the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct negotiations under the agreement for recognition.
- (4) In paragraph 63(2) the reference to collective bargaining is to negotiations relating to pay, hours and holidays.

### *Determination of type of agreement*

- 55 (1) This paragraph applies if one or more of the parties to an agreement applies to the CAC for a decision whether or not the agreement is an agreement for recognition.
- (2) The CAC must give notice of receipt of an application under sub-paragraph (1) to any parties to the agreement who are not parties to the application.
- (3) The CAC must within the decision period decide whether the agreement is an agreement for recognition.
- (4) If the CAC decides that the agreement is an agreement for recognition it must issue a declaration to that effect.
- (5) If the CAC decides that the agreement is not an agreement for recognition it must issue a declaration to that effect.
- (6) The decision period is—
- the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC receives the application under sub-paragraph (1), or
  - such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties to the agreement by notice containing reasons for the extension.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

*Termination of agreement for recognition*

- 56 (1) The employer may not terminate an agreement for recognition before the relevant period ends.
- (2) After that period ends the employer may terminate the agreement, with or without the consent of the union (or unions).
- (3) The union (or unions) may terminate an agreement for recognition at any time, with or without the consent of the employer.
- (4) Sub-paragraphs (1) to (3) have effect subject to the terms of the agreement or any other agreement of the parties.
- (5) The relevant period is the period of three years starting with the day after the date of the agreement.
- 57 (1) If an agreement for recognition is terminated, as from the termination the agreement and any provisions relating to the collective bargaining method shall cease to have effect.
- (2) For this purpose provisions relating to the collective bargaining method are—
- (a) any agreement between the parties as to the method by which collective bargaining is to be conducted with regard to the bargaining unit, or
- (b) anything effective as, or as if contained in, a legally enforceable contract and relating to the method by which collective bargaining is to be conducted with regard to the bargaining unit.

*Application to CAC to specify method*

- 58 (1) This paragraph applies if the parties make an agreement for recognition.
- (2) The parties may in the negotiation period conduct negotiations with a view to agreeing a method by which they will conduct collective bargaining.
- (3) If no agreement is made in the negotiation period the employer or the union (or unions) may apply to the CAC for assistance.
- (4) The negotiation period is—
- (a) the period of 30 working days starting with the start day, or
- (b) such longer period (so starting) as the parties may from time to time agree.
- (5) The start day is the day after that on which the agreement is made.
- 59 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the parties to an agreement for recognition agree a method by which they will conduct collective bargaining, and
- (b) one or more of the parties fails to carry out the agreement as to a method.
- (2) The employer or the union (or unions) may apply to the CAC for assistance.
- 60 (1) This paragraph applies if an application for assistance is made to the CAC under paragraph 58 or 59.
- (2) The application is not admissible unless the conditions in sub-paragraphs (3) and (4) are satisfied.

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (3) The condition is that the employer, taken with any associated employer or employers, must—
    - (a) employ at least 21 workers on the day the application is made, or
    - (b) employ an average of at least 21 workers in the 13 weeks ending with that day.
  - (4) The condition is that the union (or every union) has a certificate [<sup>F58</sup>of independence].
  - (5) To find the average under sub-paragraph (3)(b)—
    - (a) take the number of workers employed in each of the 13 weeks (including workers not employed for the whole of the week);
    - (b) aggregate the 13 numbers;
    - (c) divide the aggregate by 13.
  - (6) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3)(a) any worker employed by an associated company incorporated outside Great Britain must be ignored unless the day the application was made fell within a period during which he ordinarily worked in Great Britain.
  - (7) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3)(b) any worker employed by an associated company incorporated outside Great Britain must be ignored in relation to a week unless the whole or any part of that week fell within a period during which he ordinarily worked in Great Britain.
  - (8) For the purposes of sub-paragraphs (6) and (7) a worker who is employed on board a ship registered in the register maintained under section 8 of the Merchant Shipping Act 1995 shall be treated as ordinarily working in Great Britain unless—
    - (a) the ship's entry in the register specifies a port outside Great Britain as the port to which the vessel is to be treated as belonging,
    - (b) the employment is wholly outside Great Britain, or
    - (c) the worker is not ordinarily resident in Great Britain.
  - (9) An order made under paragraph 7(6) may also—
    - (a) provide that sub-paragraphs (2), (3) and (5) to (8) of this paragraph are not to apply, or are not to apply in specified circumstances, or
    - (b) vary the number of workers for the time being specified in sub-paragraph (3).
- 61
- (1) An application to the CAC is not admissible unless—
    - (a) it is made in such form as the CAC specifies, and
    - (b) it is supported by such documents as the CAC specifies.
  - (2) An application which is made by a union (or unions) to the CAC is not admissible unless the union gives (or unions give) to the employer—
    - (a) notice of the application, and
    - (b) a copy of the application and any documents supporting it.
  - (3) An application which is made by an employer to the CAC is not admissible unless the employer gives to the union (or each of the unions)—
    - (a) notice of the application, and
    - (b) a copy of the application and any documents supporting it.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

*CAC's response to application*

- 62 (1) The CAC must give notice to the parties of receipt of an application under paragraph 58 or 59.
- (2) Within the acceptance period the CAC must decide whether the application is admissible within the terms of paragraphs 60 and 61.
- (3) In deciding whether an application is admissible the CAC must consider any evidence which it has been given by the employer or the union (or unions).
- (4) If the CAC decides that the application is not admissible—
- (a) the CAC must give notice of its decision to the parties,
  - (b) the CAC must not accept the application, and
  - (c) no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
- (5) If the CAC decides that the application is admissible it must—
- (a) accept the application, and
  - (b) give notice of the acceptance to the parties.
- (6) The acceptance period is—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC receives the application, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.
- 63 (1) If the CAC accepts an application it must try to help the parties to reach in the agreement period an agreement on a method by which they will conduct collective bargaining.
- (2) If at the end of the agreement period the parties have not made such an agreement the CAC must specify to the parties the method by which they are to conduct collective bargaining.
- (3) Any method specified under sub-paragraph (2) is to have effect as if it were contained in a legally enforceable contract made by the parties.
- (4) But if the parties agree in writing—
- (a) that sub-paragraph (3) shall not apply, or shall not apply to particular parts of the method specified by the CAC, or
  - (b) to vary or replace the method specified by the CAC,
- the written agreement shall have effect as a legally enforceable contract made by the parties.
- (5) Specific performance shall be the only remedy available for breach of anything which is a legally enforceable contract by virtue of this paragraph.
- (6) If the CAC accepts an application, the applicant may not withdraw it after the end of the agreement period.
- (7) If at any time before a specification is made under sub-paragraph (2) the parties jointly apply to the CAC requesting it to stop taking steps under this paragraph, the CAC must comply with the request.
- (8) The agreement period is—

---

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

---

- (a) the period of 20 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC gives notice of acceptance of the application, or
- (b) such longer period (so starting) as the parties may from time to time agree.

### PART III

#### CHANGES AFFECTING BARGAINING UNIT

##### *Introduction*

- 64 (1) This Part of this Schedule applies if—
- (a) the CAC has issued a declaration that a union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a bargaining unit, and
  - (b) provisions relating to the collective bargaining method apply in relation to the unit.
- (2) In such a case, in this Part of this Schedule—
- (a) references to the original unit are to the bargaining unit on whose behalf the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining, and
  - (b) references to the bargaining arrangements are to the declaration and to the provisions relating to the collective bargaining method which apply in relation to the original unit.
- (3) For this purpose provisions relating to the collective bargaining method are—
- (a) the parties' agreement as to the method by which collective bargaining is to be conducted with regard to the original unit,
  - (b) anything effective as, or as if contained in, a legally enforceable contract and relating to the method by which collective bargaining is to be conducted with regard to the original unit, or
  - (c) any provision of this Part of this Schedule that a method of collective bargaining is to have effect with regard to the original unit.
- 65 References in this Part of this Schedule to the parties are to the employer and the union (or unions) concerned.

##### *Either party believes unit no longer appropriate*

- 66 (1) This paragraph applies if the employer believes or the union believes (or unions believe) that the original unit is no longer an appropriate bargaining unit.
- (2) The employer or union (or unions) may apply to the CAC to make a decision as to what is an appropriate bargaining unit.
- 67 (1) An application under paragraph 66 is not admissible unless the CAC decides that it is likely that the original unit is no longer appropriate by reason of any of the matters specified in sub-paragraph (2).
- (2) The matters are—
- (a) a change in the organisation or structure of the business carried on by the employer;

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) a change in the activities pursued by the employer in the course of the business carried on by him;
  - (c) a substantial change in the number of workers employed in the original unit.
- 68 (1) The CAC must give notice to the parties of receipt of an application under paragraph 66.
- (2) Within the acceptance period the CAC must decide whether the application is admissible within the terms of paragraphs 67 and 92.
- (3) In deciding whether the application is admissible the CAC must consider any evidence which it has been given by the employer or the union (or unions).
- (4) If the CAC decides that the application is not admissible —
- (a) the CAC must give notice of its decision to the parties,
  - (b) the CAC must not accept the application, and
  - (c) no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
- (5) If the CAC decides that the application is admissible it must—
- (a) accept the application, and
  - (b) give notice of the acceptance to the parties.
- (6) The acceptance period is—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC receives the application, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.
- 69 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC gives notice of acceptance of the application, and
  - (b) before the end of the first period the parties agree a bargaining unit or units (the new unit or units) differing from the original unit and inform the CAC of their agreement.
- (2) If in the CAC’s opinion the new unit (or any of the new units) contains at least one worker falling within an outside bargaining unit no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
- (3) If sub-paragraph (2) does not apply—
- (a) the CAC must issue a declaration that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the new unit or units;
  - (b) so far as it affects workers in the new unit (or units) who fall within the original unit, the declaration shall have effect in place of any declaration that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the original unit;
  - (c) the method of collective bargaining relating to the original unit shall have effect in relation to the new unit or units, with any modifications which the CAC considers necessary to take account of the change of bargaining unit and specifies in the declaration.
- (4) The first period is—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC gives notice of acceptance of the application, or



---

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) [View outstanding changes](#)

---

- (b) such longer period (so starting) as the parties may from time to time agree and notify to the CAC.
- (5) An outside bargaining unit is a bargaining unit which fulfils these conditions—
- (a) it is not the original unit;
  - (b) a union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on its behalf;
  - (c) the union (or at least one of the unions) is not a party referred to in paragraph 64.
- 70 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC gives notice of acceptance of the application, and
  - (b) the parties do not inform the CAC before the end of the first period that they have agreed a bargaining unit or units differing from the original unit.
- (2) During the second period—
- (a) the CAC must decide whether or not the original unit continues to be an appropriate bargaining unit;
  - (b) if the CAC decides that the original unit does not so continue, it must decide what other bargaining unit is or units are appropriate;
  - (c) the CAC must give notice to the parties of its decision or decisions under paragraphs (a) and (b).
- (3) In deciding whether or not the original unit continues to be an appropriate bargaining unit the CAC must take into account only these matters—
- (a) any change in the organisation or structure of the business carried on by the employer;
  - (b) any change in the activities pursued by the employer in the course of the business carried on by him;
  - (c) any substantial change in the number of workers employed in the original unit.
- (4) In deciding what other bargaining unit is or units are appropriate the CAC must take these matters into account—
- (a) the need for the unit or units to be compatible with effective management;
  - (b) the matters listed in sub-paragraph (5), so far as they do not conflict with that need.
- (5) The matters are—
- (a) the views of the employer and of the union (or unions);
  - (b) existing national and local bargaining arrangements;
  - (c) the desirability of avoiding small fragmented bargaining units within an undertaking;
  - (d) the characteristics of workers falling within the original unit and of any other employees of the employer whom the CAC considers relevant;
  - (e) the location of workers.
- (6) If the CAC decides that two or more bargaining units are appropriate its decision must be such that no worker falls within more than one of them.
- (7) The second period is—

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the first period ends, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.
- 71 If the CAC gives notice under paragraph 70 of a decision that the original unit continues to be an appropriate bargaining unit no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
- 72 Paragraph 82 applies if the CAC gives notice under paragraph 70 of—
- (a) a decision that the original unit is no longer an appropriate bargaining unit, and
  - (b) a decision as to the bargaining unit which is (or units which are) appropriate.
- 73 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the parties agree under paragraph 69 a bargaining unit or units differing from the original unit,
  - (b) paragraph 69(2) does not apply, and
  - (c) at least one worker falling within the original unit does not fall within the new unit (or any of the new units).
- (2) In such a case—
- (a) the CAC must issue a declaration that the bargaining arrangements, so far as relating to the worker or workers mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(c), are to cease to have effect on a date specified by the CAC in the declaration, and
  - (b) the bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect accordingly.

*Employer believes unit has ceased to exist*

- 74 (1) If the employer—
- (a) believes that the original unit has ceased to exist, and
  - (b) wishes the bargaining arrangements to cease to have effect,
- he must give the union (or each of the unions) a notice complying with sub-paragraph (2) and must give a copy of the notice to the CAC.
- (2) A notice complies with this sub-paragraph if it—
- (a) identifies the unit and the bargaining arrangements,
  - (b) states the date on which the notice is given,
  - (c) states that the unit has ceased to exist, and
  - (d) states that the bargaining arrangements are to cease to have effect on a date which is specified in the notice and which falls after the end of the period of 35 working days starting with the day after that on which the notice is given.
- (3) Within the validation period the CAC must decide whether the notice complies with sub-paragraph (2).
- (4) If the CAC decides that the notice does not comply with sub-paragraph (2)—
- (a) the CAC must give the parties notice of its decision, and
  - (b) the employer's notice shall be treated as not having been given.
- (5) If the CAC decides that the notice complies with sub-paragraph (2) it must give the parties notice of the decision.

---

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

---

- (6) The bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect on the date specified under sub-paragraph (2)(d) if—
- (a) the CAC gives notice under sub-paragraph (5), and
  - (b) the union does not (or unions do not) apply to the CAC under paragraph 75.
- (7) The validation period is—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC receives the copy of the notice, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.
- 75 (1) Paragraph 76 applies if—
- (a) the CAC gives notice under paragraph 74(5), and
  - (b) within the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the notice is given the union makes (or unions make) an application to the CAC for a decision on the questions specified in sub-paragraph (2).
- (2) The questions are—
- (a) whether the original unit has ceased to exist;
  - (b) whether the original unit is no longer appropriate by reason of any of the matters specified in sub-paragraph (3).
- (3) The matters are—
- (a) a change in the organisation or structure of the business carried on by the employer;
  - (b) a change in the activities pursued by the employer in the course of the business carried on by him;
  - (c) a substantial change in the number of workers employed in the original unit.
- 76 (1) The CAC must give notice to the parties of receipt of an application under paragraph 75.
- (2) Within the acceptance period the CAC must decide whether the application is admissible within the terms of paragraph 92.
- (3) In deciding whether the application is admissible the CAC must consider any evidence which it has been given by the employer or the union (or unions).
- (4) If the CAC decides that the application is not admissible—
- (a) the CAC must give notice of its decision to the parties,
  - (b) the CAC must not accept the application, and
  - (c) no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
- (5) If the CAC decides that the application is admissible it must—
- (a) accept the application, and
  - (b) give notice of the acceptance to the parties.
- (6) The acceptance period is—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC receives the application, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- 77 (1) If the CAC accepts an application it—
- (a) must give the employer and the union (or unions) an opportunity to put their views on the questions in relation to which the application was made;
  - (b) must decide the questions before the end of the decision period.
- (2) If the CAC decides that the original unit has ceased to exist—
- (a) the CAC must give the parties notice of its decision, and
  - (b) the bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect on the termination date.
- (3) If the CAC decides that the original unit has not ceased to exist, and that it is not the case that the original unit is no longer appropriate by reason of any of the matters specified in paragraph 75(3)—
- (a) the CAC must give the parties notice of its decision, and
  - (b) the employer’s notice shall be treated as not having been given.
- (4) If the CAC decides that the original unit has not ceased to exist, and that the original unit is no longer appropriate by reason of any of the matters specified in paragraph 75(3), the CAC must give the parties notice of its decision.
- (5) The decision period is—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC gives notice of acceptance of the application, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.
- (6) The termination date is the later of—
- (a) the date specified under paragraph 74(2)(d), and
  - (b) the day after the last day of the decision period.
- 78 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC gives notice under paragraph 77(4), and
  - (b) before the end of the first period the parties agree a bargaining unit or units (the new unit or units) differing from the original unit and inform the CAC of their agreement.
- (2) If in the CAC’s opinion the new unit (or any of the new units) contains at least one worker falling within an outside bargaining unit no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
- (3) If sub-paragraph (2) does not apply—
- (a) the CAC must issue a declaration that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the new unit or units;
  - (b) so far as it affects workers in the new unit (or units) who fall within the original unit, the declaration shall have effect in place of any declaration that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the original unit;
  - (c) the method of collective bargaining relating to the original unit shall have effect in relation to the new unit or units, with any modifications which the CAC considers necessary to take account of the change of bargaining unit and specifies in the declaration.
- (4) The first period is—

---

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

---

- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC gives notice under paragraph 77(4), or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the parties may from time to time agree and notify to the CAC.
- (5) An outside bargaining unit is a bargaining unit which fulfils these conditions—
  - (a) it is not the original unit;
  - (b) a union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on its behalf;
  - (c) the union (or at least one of the unions) is not a party referred to in paragraph 64.
- 79 (1) This paragraph applies if—
  - (a) the CAC gives notice under paragraph 77(4), and
  - (b) the parties do not inform the CAC before the end of the first period that they have agreed a bargaining unit or units differing from the original unit.
- (2) During the second period the CAC—
  - (a) must decide what other bargaining unit is or units are appropriate;
  - (b) must give notice of its decision to the parties.
- (3) In deciding what other bargaining unit is or units are appropriate, the CAC must take these matters into account—
  - (a) the need for the unit or units to be compatible with effective management;
  - (b) the matters listed in sub-paragraph (4), so far as they do not conflict with that need.
- (4) The matters are—
  - (a) the views of the employer and of the union (or unions);
  - (b) existing national and local bargaining arrangements;
  - (c) the desirability of avoiding small fragmented bargaining units within an undertaking;
  - (d) the characteristics of workers falling within the original unit and of any other employees of the employer whom the CAC considers relevant;
  - (e) the location of workers.
- (5) If the CAC decides that two or more bargaining units are appropriate its decision must be such that no worker falls within more than one of them.
- (6) The second period is—
  - (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the first period ends, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.
- 80 Paragraph 82 applies if the CAC gives notice under paragraph 79 of a decision as to the bargaining unit which is (or units which are) appropriate.
- 81 (1) This paragraph applies if—
  - (a) the parties agree under paragraph 78 a bargaining unit or units differing from the original unit,
  - (b) paragraph 78(2) does not apply, and

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (c) at least one worker falling within the original unit does not fall within the new unit (or any of the new units).

(2) In such a case —

- (a) the CAC must issue a declaration that the bargaining arrangements, so far as relating to the worker or workers mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(c), are to cease to have effect on a date specified by the CAC in the declaration, and
- (b) the bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect accordingly.

*Position where CAC decides new unit*

- 82 (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC gives notice under paragraph 70 of—
- (a) a decision that the original unit is no longer an appropriate bargaining unit, and
  - (b) a decision as to the bargaining unit which is (or units which are) appropriate.
- (2) This paragraph also applies if the CAC gives notice under paragraph 79 of a decision as to the bargaining unit which is (or units which are) appropriate.
- (3) The CAC—
- (a) must proceed as stated in paragraphs 83 to 89 with regard to the appropriate unit (if there is one only), or
  - (b) must proceed as stated in paragraphs 83 to 89 with regard to each appropriate unit separately (if there are two or more).
- (4) References in those paragraphs to the new unit are to the appropriate unit under consideration.
- 83 (1) This paragraph applies if in the CAC’s opinion the new unit contains at least one worker falling within a statutory outside bargaining unit.
- (2) In such a case—
- (a) the CAC must issue a declaration that the relevant bargaining arrangements, so far as relating to workers falling within the new unit, are to cease to have effect on a date specified by the CAC in the declaration, and
  - (b) the relevant bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect accordingly.
- (3) The relevant bargaining arrangements are—
- (a) the bargaining arrangements relating to the original unit, and
  - (b) the bargaining arrangements relating to each statutory outside bargaining unit containing workers who fall within the new unit.
- (4) The bargaining arrangements relating to the original unit are the bargaining arrangements as defined in paragraph 64.
- (5) The bargaining arrangements relating to an outside unit are—
- (a) the declaration recognising a union (or unions) as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the workers constituting the outside unit, and
  - (b) the provisions relating to the collective bargaining method.
- (6) For this purpose the provisions relating to the collective bargaining method are—

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (a) any agreement by the employer and the union (or unions) as to the method by which collective bargaining is to be conducted with regard to the outside unit,
  - (b) anything effective as, or as if contained in, a legally enforceable contract and relating to the method by which collective bargaining is to be conducted with regard to the outside unit, or
  - (c) any provision of this Part of this Schedule that a method of collective bargaining is to have effect with regard to the outside unit.
- (7) A statutory outside bargaining unit is a bargaining unit which fulfils these conditions—
- (a) it is not the original unit;
  - (b) a union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on its behalf by virtue of a declaration of the CAC;
  - (c) the union (or at least one of the unions) is not a party referred to in paragraph 64.
- (8) The date specified under sub-paragraph [F59(2)(a)] must be—
- (a) the date on which the relevant period expires, or
  - (b) if the CAC believes that to maintain the relevant bargaining arrangements would be impracticable or contrary to the interests of good industrial relations, the date after the date on which the declaration is issued;
- and the relevant period is the period of 65 working days starting with the day after that on which the declaration is issued.

#### Textual Amendments

**F59** Words in Sch. A1 para. 83(8) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 57\(1\), 59\(2\)-\(4\), Sch. 1 para. 23\(17\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4, Sch. 1](#) (with [arts. 6-21](#))

- 84 (1) This paragraph applies if in the CAC's opinion the new unit contains—
- (a) at least one worker falling within a voluntary outside bargaining unit, but
  - (b) no worker falling within a statutory outside bargaining unit.
- (2) In such a case—
- (a) the CAC must issue a declaration that the original bargaining arrangements, so far as relating to workers falling within the new unit, are to cease to have effect on a date specified by the CAC in the declaration, and
  - (b) the original bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect accordingly.
- (3) The original bargaining arrangements are the bargaining arrangements as defined in paragraph 64.
- (4) A voluntary outside bargaining unit is a bargaining unit which fulfils these conditions—
- (a) it is not the original unit;
  - (b) a union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on its behalf by virtue of an agreement with the employer;
  - (c) the union (or at least one of the unions) is not a party referred to in paragraph 64.
- (5) The date specified under sub-paragraph (2)(a) must be—

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (a) the date on which the relevant period expires, or
  - (b) if the CAC believes that to maintain the original bargaining arrangements would be impracticable or contrary to the interests of good industrial relations, the date after the date on which the declaration is issued;
- and the relevant period is the period of 65 working days starting with the day after that on which the declaration is issued.
- 85 (1) If the CAC’s opinion is not that mentioned in paragraph 83(1) or 84(1) it must—
- (a) decide whether the difference between the original unit and the new unit is such that the support of the union (or unions) within the new unit needs to be assessed, and
  - (b) inform the parties of its decision.
- (2) If the CAC’s decision is that such support does not need to be assessed—
- (a) the CAC must issue a declaration that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the new unit;
  - (b) so far as it affects workers in the new unit who fall within the original unit, the declaration shall have effect in place of any declaration that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the original unit;
  - (c) the method of collective bargaining relating to the original unit shall have effect in relation to the new unit, with any modifications which the CAC considers necessary to take account of the change of bargaining unit and specifies in the declaration.
- 86 (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC decides under paragraph 85(1) that the support of the union (or unions) within the new unit needs to be assessed.
- (2) The CAC must decide these questions—
- (a) whether members of the union (or unions) constitute at least 10 per cent of the workers constituting the new unit;
  - (b) whether a majority of the workers constituting the new unit would be likely to favour recognition of the union (or unions) as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the new unit.
- (3) If the CAC decides one or both of the questions in the negative—
- (a) the CAC must issue a declaration that the bargaining arrangements, so far as relating to workers falling within the new unit, are to cease to have effect on a date specified by the CAC in the declaration, and
  - (b) the bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect accordingly.
- 87 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC decides both the questions in paragraph 86(2) in the affirmative, and
  - (b) the CAC is satisfied that a majority of the workers constituting the new unit are members of the union (or unions).
- (2) The CAC must issue a declaration that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the workers constituting the new unit.
- (3) But if any of the three qualifying conditions is fulfilled, instead of issuing a declaration under sub-paragraph (2) the CAC must give notice to the parties that it intends to arrange for the holding of a secret ballot in which the workers constituting



*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

the new unit are asked whether they want the union (or unions) to conduct collective bargaining on their behalf.

- (4) These are the three qualifying conditions—
- (a) the CAC is satisfied that a ballot should be held in the interests of good industrial relations;
  - [<sup>F60</sup>(b) the CAC has evidence, which it considers to be credible, from a significant number of the union members within the new bargaining unit that they do not want the union (or unions) to conduct collective bargaining on their behalf;]
  - (c) membership evidence is produced which leads the CAC to conclude that there are doubts whether a significant number of the union members within the new unit want the union (or unions) to conduct collective bargaining on their behalf.
- (5) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (4)(c) membership evidence is—
- (a) evidence about the circumstances in which union members became members;
  - (b) evidence about the length of time for which union members have been members, in a case where the CAC is satisfied that such evidence should be taken into account.
- (6) If the CAC issues a declaration under sub-paragraph (2)—
- (a) so far as it affects workers in the new unit who fall within the original unit, the declaration shall have effect in place of any declaration that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the original unit;
  - (b) the method of collective bargaining relating to the original unit shall have effect in relation to the new unit, with any modifications which the CAC considers necessary to take account of the change of bargaining unit and specifies in the declaration.

#### Textual Amendments

**F60** Sch. A1 para 87(4)(b) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 6\(2\), 59\(2\)-\(4\); S.I. 2005/872, art. 4, Sch.](#) (with arts. 6-21)

- 88 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC decides both the questions in paragraph 86(2) in the affirmative, and
  - (b) the CAC is not satisfied that a majority of the workers constituting the new unit are members of the union (or unions).
- (2) The CAC must give notice to the parties that it intends to arrange for the holding of a secret ballot in which the workers constituting the new unit are asked whether they want the union (or unions) to conduct collective bargaining on their behalf.
- 89 (1) If the CAC gives notice under paragraph 87(3) or 88(2) the union (or unions) may within the notification period notify the CAC that the union does not (or unions do not) want the CAC to arrange for the holding of the ballot; and the notification period is the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the union (or last of the unions) receives the CAC's notice.
- (2) If the CAC is so notified—

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (a) it must not arrange for the holding of the ballot,
  - (b) it must inform the parties that it will not arrange for the holding of the ballot, and why,
  - (c) it must issue a declaration that the bargaining arrangements, so far as relating to workers falling within the new unit, are to cease to have effect on a date specified by it in the declaration, and
  - (d) the bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect accordingly.
- (3) If the CAC is not so notified it must arrange for the holding of the ballot.
- (4) Paragraph 25 applies if the CAC arranges under this paragraph for the holding of a ballot (as well as if the CAC arranges under paragraph 24 for the holding of a ballot).
- (5) Paragraphs 26 to 29 apply accordingly, [<sup>F61</sup> but as if—
- (a) references to the bargaining unit were references to the new unit, and
  - (b) paragraph 26(4F) to (4H), and the references in paragraph 26(4) and (6) to paragraph 19D, were omitted.]
- (6) If as a result of the ballot the CAC issues a declaration that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the new unit—
- (a) so far as it affects workers in the new unit who fall within the original unit, the declaration shall have effect in place of any declaration that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the original unit;
  - (b) the method of collective bargaining relating to the original unit shall have effect in relation to the new unit, with any modifications which the CAC considers necessary to take account of the change of bargaining unit and specifies in the declaration.
- (7) If as a result of the ballot the CAC issues a declaration that the union is (or unions are) not entitled to be recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the new unit—
- (a) the CAC must state in the declaration the date on which the bargaining arrangements, so far as relating to workers falling within the new unit, are to cease to have effect, and
  - (b) the bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect accordingly.
- (8) Paragraphs (a) and (b) of sub-paragraph (6) also apply if the CAC issues a declaration under paragraph 27(2) [<sup>F62</sup> or 27D(3)].
- [<sup>F63</sup>(9) Paragraphs (a) and (b) of sub-paragraph (7) also apply if the CAC issues a declaration under paragraph 27D(4).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F61** Words in Sch. A1 para. 89(5) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(18\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)
- F62** Words in Sch A1 para. 89(8) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(19\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)
- F63** Sch A1 para. 89(9) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(20\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

---

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

---

### *Residual workers*

- 90 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC decides an appropriate bargaining unit or units under paragraph 70 or 79, and
  - (b) at least one worker falling within the original unit does not fall within the new unit (or any of the new units).
- (2) In such a case —
- (a) the CAC must issue a declaration that the bargaining arrangements, so far as relating to the worker or workers mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(b), are to cease to have effect on a date specified by the CAC in the declaration, and
  - (b) the bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect accordingly.
- 91 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC has proceeded as stated in paragraphs 83 to 89 with regard to the new unit (if there is one only) or with regard to each new unit (if there are two or more), and
  - (b) in so doing the CAC has issued one or more declarations under paragraph 83.
- (2) The CAC must—
- (a) consider each declaration issued under paragraph 83, and
  - (b) in relation to each declaration, identify each statutory outside bargaining unit which contains at least one worker who also falls within the new unit to which the declaration relates;
- and in this paragraph each statutory outside bargaining unit so identified is referred to as a parent unit.
- (3) The CAC must then—
- (a) consider each parent unit, and
  - (b) in relation to each parent unit, identify any workers who fall within the parent unit but who do not fall within the new unit (or any of the new units);
- and in this paragraph the workers so identified in relation to a parent unit are referred to as a residual unit.
- (4) In relation to each residual unit, the CAC must issue a declaration that the outside union is (or outside unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on its behalf.
- (5) But no such declaration shall be issued in relation to a residual unit if the CAC has received an application under paragraph 66 or 75 in relation to its parent unit.
- (6) In this paragraph references to the outside union (or to outside unions) in relation to a residual unit are to the union which is (or unions which are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of its parent unit.
- (7) If the CAC issues a declaration under sub-paragraph (4)—
- (a) the declaration shall have effect in place of the existing declaration that the outside union is (or outside unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the parent unit, so far as the existing declaration relates to the residual unit;
  - (b) if there is a method of collective bargaining relating to the parent unit, it shall have effect in relation to the residual unit with any modifications which the

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

CAC considers necessary to take account of the change of bargaining unit and specifies in the declaration.

*Applications under this Part*

- 92 (1) An application to the CAC under this Part of this Schedule is not admissible unless—
- (a) it is made in such form as the CAC specifies, and
  - (b) it is supported by such documents as the CAC specifies.
- (2) An application which is made by a union (or unions) to the CAC under this Part of this Schedule is not admissible unless the union gives (or unions give) to the employer—
- (a) notice of the application, and
  - (b) a copy of the application and any documents supporting it.
- (3) An application which is made by an employer to the CAC under this Part of this Schedule is not admissible unless the employer gives to the union (or each of the unions)—
- (a) notice of the application, and
  - (b) a copy of the application and any documents supporting it.

*Withdrawal of application*

- 93 (1) If an application under paragraph 66 or 75 is accepted by the CAC, the applicant (or applicants) may not withdraw the application—
- (a) after the CAC issues a declaration under paragraph 69(3) or 78(3),
  - (b) after the CAC decides under paragraph 77(2) or 77(3),
  - (c) after the CAC issues a declaration under paragraph [F6483(2)], 85(2), 86(3) or 87(2) in relation to the new unit (where there is only one) or a declaration under any of those paragraphs in relation to any of the new units (where there is more than one),
  - (d) after the union has (or unions have) notified the CAC under paragraph 89(1) in relation to the new unit (where there is only one) or any of the new units (where there is more than one), or
  - (e) after the end of the notification period referred to in paragraph 89(1) and relating to the new unit (where there is only one) or any of the new units (where there is more than one).
- (2) If an application is withdrawn by the applicant (or applicants)—
- (a) the CAC must give notice of the withdrawal to the other party (or parties), and
  - (b) no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.

**Textual Amendments**

**F64** Words in Sch. 1A para. 93(1)(c) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(21\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#) (with arts. 6-21)

*Meaning of collective bargaining*

- 94 (1) This paragraph applies for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (2) Except in relation to paragraphs 69(5), 78(5) and 83(6), the meaning of collective bargaining given by section 178(1) shall not apply.
- (3) In relation to a new unit references to collective bargaining are to negotiations relating to the matters which were the subject of collective bargaining in relation to the corresponding original unit; and the corresponding original unit is the unit which was the subject of an application under paragraph 66 or 75 in consequence of which the new unit was agreed by the parties or decided by the CAC.
- (4) But if the parties agree matters as the subject of collective bargaining in relation to the new unit, references to collective bargaining in relation to that unit are to negotiations relating to the agreed matters; and this is the case whether the agreement is made before or after the time when the CAC issues a declaration that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the new unit.
- (5) In relation to a residual unit in relation to which a declaration is issued under paragraph 91, references to collective bargaining are to negotiations relating to the matters which were the subject of collective bargaining in relation to the corresponding parent unit.
- (6) In construing paragraphs 69(3)(c), 78(3)(c), 85(2)(c), 87(6)(b) and 89(6)(b)—
  - (a) sub-paragraphs (3) and (4) do not apply, and
  - (b) references to collective bargaining are to negotiations relating to pay, hours and holidays.

#### *Method of collective bargaining*

- 95
- (1) This paragraph applies for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule.
  - (2) Where a method of collective bargaining has effect in relation to a new unit, that method shall have effect as if it were contained in a legally enforceable contract made by the parties.
  - (3) But if the parties agree in writing—
    - (a) that sub-paragraph (2) shall not apply, or shall not apply to particular parts of the method, or
    - (b) to vary or replace the method,the written agreement shall have effect as a legally enforceable contract made by the parties.
  - (4) Specific performance shall be the only remedy available for breach of anything which is a legally enforceable contract by virtue of this paragraph.

### **PART IV**

#### **DERECOGNITION: GENERAL**

##### *Introduction*

- 96
- (1) This Part of this Schedule applies if the CAC has issued a declaration that a union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a bargaining unit.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (2) In such a case references in this Part of this Schedule to the bargaining arrangements are to the declaration and to the provisions relating to the collective bargaining method.
- (3) For this purpose the provisions relating to the collective bargaining method are—
- (a) the parties' agreement as to the method by which collective bargaining is to be conducted,
  - (b) anything effective as, or as if contained in, a legally enforceable contract and relating to the method by which collective bargaining is to be conducted, or
  - (c) any provision of Part III of this Schedule that a method of collective bargaining is to have effect.
- 97 For the purposes of this Part of this Schedule the relevant date is the date of the expiry of the period of 3 years starting with the date of the CAC's declaration.
- 98 References in this Part of this Schedule to the parties are to the employer and the union (or unions) concerned.

*Employer employs fewer than 21 workers*

- 99 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the employer believes that he, taken with any associated employer or employers, employed an average of fewer than 21 workers in any period of 13 weeks, and
  - (b) that period ends on or after the relevant date.
- (2) If the employer wishes the bargaining arrangements to cease to have effect, he must give the union (or each of the unions) a notice complying with sub-paragraph (3) and must give a copy of the notice to the CAC.
- (3) A notice complies with this sub-paragraph if it—
- [<sup>F65</sup>(za) is not invalidated by paragraph 99A,]
  - (a) identifies the bargaining arrangements,
  - (b) specifies the period of 13 weeks in question,
  - (c) states the date on which the notice is given,
  - (d) is given within the period of 5 working days starting with the day after the last day of the specified period of 13 weeks,
  - (e) states that the employer, taken with any associated employer or employers, employed an average of fewer than 21 workers in the specified period of 13 weeks, and
  - (f) states that the bargaining arrangements are to cease to have effect on a date which is specified in the notice and which falls after the end of the period of 35 working days starting with the day after that on which the notice is given.
- (4) To find the average number of workers employed by the employer, taken with any associated employer or employers, in the specified period of 13 weeks—
- (a) take the number of workers employed in each of the 13 weeks (including workers not employed for the whole of the week);
  - (b) aggregate the 13 numbers;
  - (c) divide the aggregate by 13.

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

(5) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(a) any worker employed by an associated company incorporated outside Great Britain must be ignored in relation to a week unless the whole or any part of that week fell within a period during which he ordinarily worked in Great Britain.

[<sup>F66</sup>(5A) Sub-paragraph (5B) applies to an agency worker whose contract within regulation 3(1)(b) of the Agency Workers Regulations 2010 (contract with the temporary work agency) is not a contract of employment..

(5B) For the purposes of sub-paragraphs (1) and (4), the agency worker is to be treated as having a contract of employment with the temporary work agency for the duration of the assignment with the employer (and “assignment” has the same meaning as in those Regulations).]

(6) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (5) a worker who is employed on board a ship registered in the register maintained under section 8 of the Merchant Shipping Act 1995 shall be treated as ordinarily working in Great Britain unless—

- (a) the ship’s entry in the register specifies a port outside Great Britain as the port to which the vessel is to be treated as belonging,
- (b) the employment is wholly outside Great Britain, or
- (c) the worker is not ordinarily resident in Great Britain.

(7) An order made under paragraph 7(6) may also—

- (a) provide that sub-paragraphs (1) to (6) of this paragraph and paragraphs [<sup>F67</sup>99A] to 103 are not to apply, or are not to apply in specified circumstances, or
- (b) vary the number of workers for the time being specified in sub-paragraphs (1)(a) and (3)(e).

#### Textual Amendments

- F65** Sch. A1 para. 99(3)(za) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 12\(2\)](#), [59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#) (with [arts. 6-21](#))
- F66** Sch. A1 para. 99(5A)(5B) inserted (1.10.2011) by [The Agency Workers Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/93\)](#), [reg. 1\(1\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 7\(3\)](#)
- F67** Word in Sch A1 para. 99(7)(a) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 12\(3\)](#), [59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#) (with [arts 6-12](#))

[<sup>F68</sup>99A(1) A notice given for the purposes of paragraph 99(2) (“the notice in question”) is invalidated by this paragraph if—

- (a) a relevant application was made, or an earlier notice under paragraph 99(2) was given, within the period of 3 years prior to the date when the notice in question was given,
- (b) the relevant application, or that earlier notice, and the notice in question relate to the same bargaining unit, and
- (c) the CAC accepted the relevant application or (as the case may be) decided under paragraph 100 that the earlier notice under paragraph 99(2) complied with paragraph 99(3).

(2) A relevant application is an application made to the CAC—

- (a) by the employer under paragraph 106, 107 or 128, or
- (b) by a worker (or workers) under paragraph 112.]

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

**Textual Amendments**  
**F68** Sch. A1 para. 99A inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 12(4)**, 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2005/872, **art. 4**, Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 100 (1) [<sup>F69</sup>If an employer gives notice for the purposes of paragraph 99(2),] within the validation period the CAC must decide whether the notice complies with paragraph 99(3).
- (2) If the CAC decides that the notice does not comply with paragraph 99(3)—
  - (a) the CAC must give the parties notice of its decision, and
  - (b) the employer’s notice shall be treated as not having been given.
- (3) If the CAC decides that the notice complies with paragraph 99(3) it must give the parties notice of the decision.
- (4) The bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect on the date specified under paragraph 99(3)(f) if—
  - (a) the CAC gives notice under sub-paragraph (3), and
  - (b) the union does not (or unions do not) apply to the CAC under paragraph 101.
- (5) The validation period is—
  - (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC receives the copy of the notice, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.

**Textual Amendments**  
**F69** Words in Sch. A1 para. 100(1) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 12(5)**, 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2005/872, **art. 4**, Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 101 (1) This paragraph applies if—
  - (a) the CAC gives notice under paragraph 100(3), and
  - (b) within the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the notice is given, the union makes (or unions make) an application to the CAC for a decision whether the period of 13 weeks specified under paragraph 99(3)(b) ends on or after the relevant date and whether the statement made under paragraph 99(3)(e) is correct.
- (2) An application is not admissible unless—
  - (a) it is made in such form as the CAC specifies, and
  - (b) it is supported by such documents as the CAC specifies.
- (3) An application is not admissible unless the union gives (or unions give) to the employer—
  - (a) notice of the application, and
  - (b) a copy of the application and any documents supporting it.
- (4) <sup>F70</sup> .....
- (5) <sup>F70</sup> .....



**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

### Textual Amendments

**F70** Sch. A1 para. 101(4)(5) repealed (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 12\(6\), 57\(2\), 59\(2\)-\(4\)](#), [Sch. 2](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 102 (1) The CAC must give notice to the parties of receipt of an application under paragraph 101.
- (2) Within the acceptance period the CAC must decide whether the application is admissible within the terms of paragraph 101.
- (3) In deciding whether an application is admissible the CAC must consider any evidence which it has been given by the employer or the union (or unions).
- (4) If the CAC decides that the application is not admissible—
- (a) the CAC must give notice of its decision to the parties,
  - (b) the CAC must not accept the application,
  - (c) no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule, and
  - (d) the bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect on the date specified under paragraph 99(3)(f).
- (5) If the CAC decides that the application is admissible it must—
- (a) accept the application, and
  - (b) give notice of the acceptance to the parties.
- (6) The acceptance period is—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC receives the application, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.
- 103 (1) If the CAC accepts an application it—
- (a) must give the employer and the union (or unions) an opportunity to put their views on the questions whether the period of 13 weeks specified under paragraph 99(3)(b) ends on or after the relevant date and whether the statement made under paragraph 99(3)(e) is correct;
  - (b) must decide the questions within the decision period and must give reasons for the decision.
- (2) If the CAC decides that the period of 13 weeks specified under paragraph 99(3)(b) ends on or after the relevant date and that the statement made under paragraph 99(3)(e) is correct the bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect on the termination date.
- (3) If the CAC decides that the period of 13 weeks specified under paragraph 99(3)(b) does not end on or after the relevant date or that the statement made under paragraph 99(3)(e) is not correct, the notice under paragraph 99 shall be treated as not having been given.
- [<sup>F71</sup>(3A) Sub-paragraph (3) does not prevent the notice from being treated for the purposes of the provisions mentioned in sub-paragraph (3B) as having been given.
- (3B) Those provisions are—
- (a) paragraphs 109(1), 113(1) and 130(1);

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) paragraph 99A(1) in its application to a later notice given for the purposes of paragraph 99(2).]
- (4) The decision period is—
  - (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC gives notice of acceptance of the application, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.
- (5) The termination date is the later of—
  - (a) the date specified under paragraph 99(3)(f), and
  - (b) the day after the last day of the decision period.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F71** Sch. A1 para. 103(3A)(3B) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 12(7), 59(2)-(4)**; [S.I. 2005/872](#), **art. 4**, Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

#### *Employer's request to end arrangements*

- 104 (1) This paragraph and paragraphs 105 to 111 apply if after the relevant date the employer requests the union (or each of the unions) to agree to end the bargaining arrangements.
- (2) The request is not valid unless it—
- (a) is in writing,
  - (b) is received by the union (or each of the unions),
  - (c) identifies the bargaining arrangements, and
  - (d) states that it is made under this Schedule.
- 105 (1) If before the end of the first period the parties agree to end the bargaining arrangements no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (3) applies if before the end of the first period—
- (a) the union informs the employer that the union does not accept the request but is willing to negotiate, or
  - (b) the unions inform the employer that the unions do not accept the request but are willing to negotiate.
- (3) The parties may conduct negotiations with a view to agreeing to end the bargaining arrangements.
- (4) If such an agreement is made before the end of the second period no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
- (5) The employer and the union (or unions) may request ACAS to assist in conducting the negotiations.
- (6) The first period is the period of 10 working days starting with the day after—
- (a) the day on which the union receives the request, or
  - (b) the last day on which any of the unions receives the request.
- (7) The second period is—

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (a) the period of 20 working days starting with the day after that on which the first period ends, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the parties may from time to time agree.
- 106 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) before the end of the first period the union fails (or unions fail) to respond to the request, or
  - (b) before the end of the first period the union informs the employer that it does not (or unions inform the employer that they do not) accept the request (without indicating a willingness to negotiate).
- (2) The employer may apply to the CAC for the holding of a secret ballot to decide whether the bargaining arrangements should be ended.
- 107 (1) This paragraph applies if —
- (a) the union informs (or unions inform) the employer under paragraph 105(2), and
  - (b) no agreement is made before the end of the second period.
- (2) The employer may apply to the CAC for the holding of a secret ballot to decide whether the bargaining arrangements should be ended.
- (3) But no application may be made if within the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the union informs (or unions inform) the employer under paragraph 105(2) the union proposes (or unions propose) that ACAS be requested to assist in conducting the negotiations and—
- (a) the employer rejects the proposal, or
  - (b) the employer fails to accept the proposal within the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the union makes (or unions make) the proposal.
- 108 (1) An application under paragraph 106 or 107 is not admissible unless—
- (a) it is made in such form as the CAC specifies, and
  - (b) it is supported by such documents as the CAC specifies.
- (2) An application under paragraph 106 or 107 is not admissible unless the employer gives to the union (or each of the unions)—
- (a) notice of the application, and
  - (b) a copy of the application and any documents supporting it.
- 109 (1) An application under paragraph 106 or 107 is not admissible if—
- (a) a relevant application was made [<sup>F72</sup>, or a notice under paragraph 99(2) was given,] within the period of 3 years prior to the date of the application under paragraph 106 or 107,
  - (b) the relevant application [<sup>F73</sup>, or notice under paragraph 99(2),] and the application under paragraph 106 or 107 relate to the same bargaining unit, and
  - (c) the CAC accepted the relevant application [<sup>F74</sup> or (as the case may be) decided under paragraph 100 that the notice complied with paragraph 99(3)].
- (2) A relevant application is an application made to the CAC—
- (a) <sup>F75</sup> .....
  - (b) by the employer under paragraph 106, 107 or 128, or

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (c) by a worker (or workers) under paragraph 112.

#### Textual Amendments

- F72** Words in Sch. A1 para. 109(1)(a) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 12\(8\)\(a\)](#), [59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)
- F73** Words in Sch. A1 para. 109(1)(b) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 12\(8\)\(b\)](#), [59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)
- F74** Words in Sch. A1 para. 109(1)(c) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 12\(8\)\(c\)](#), [59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)
- F75** Sch. A1 para. 109(2)(a) repealed (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 12\(9\)](#), [57\(2\)](#), [59\(2\)-\(4\)](#), [Sch. 2](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 110 (1) An application under paragraph 106 or 107 is not admissible unless the CAC decides that—
- (a) at least 10 per cent of the workers constituting the bargaining unit favour an end of the bargaining arrangements, and
  - (b) a majority of the workers constituting the bargaining unit would be likely to favour an end of the bargaining arrangements.
- (2) The CAC must give reasons for the decision.
- 111 (1) The CAC must give notice to the parties of receipt of an application under paragraph 106 or 107.
- (2) Within the acceptance period the CAC must decide whether—
- (a) the request is valid within the terms of paragraph 104, and
  - (b) the application is made in accordance with paragraph 106 or 107 and admissible within the terms of paragraphs 108 to 110.
- (3) In deciding those questions the CAC must consider any evidence which it has been given by the employer or the union (or unions).
- (4) If the CAC decides that the request is not valid or the application is not made in accordance with paragraph 106 or 107 or is not admissible—
- (a) the CAC must give notice of its decision to the parties,
  - (b) the CAC must not accept the application, and
  - (c) no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
- (5) If the CAC decides that the request is valid and the application is made in accordance with paragraph 106 or 107 and is admissible it must—
- (a) accept the application, and
  - (b) give notice of the acceptance to the parties.
- (6) The acceptance period is—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC receives the application, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

*Workers' application to end arrangements*

- 112 (1) A worker or workers falling within the bargaining unit may after the relevant date apply to the CAC to have the bargaining arrangements ended.
- (2) An application is not admissible unless—
- (a) it is made in such form as the CAC specifies, and
  - (b) it is supported by such documents as the CAC specifies.
- (3) An application is not admissible unless the worker gives (or workers give) to the employer and to the union (or each of the unions)—
- (a) notice of the application, and
  - (b) a copy of the application and any documents supporting it.
- 113 (1) An application under paragraph 112 is not admissible if—
- (a) a relevant application was made [<sup>F76</sup>, or a notice under paragraph 99(2) was given,] within the period of 3 years prior to the date of the application under paragraph 112,
  - (b) the relevant application [<sup>F77</sup>, or notice under paragraph 99(2),] and the application under paragraph 112 relate to the same bargaining unit, and
  - (c) the CAC accepted the relevant application [<sup>F78</sup> or (as the case may be) decided under paragraph 100 that the notice complied with paragraph 99(3)].
- (2) A relevant application is an application made to the CAC—
- (a) <sup>F79</sup> .....
  - (b) by the employer under paragraph 106, 107 or 128, or
  - (c) by a worker (or workers) under paragraph 112.

**Textual Amendments**

- F76** Words in Sch. A1 para. 113(1)(a) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 12\(8\)\(a\)](#), [59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)
- F77** Words in Sch. A1 para. 113(1)(b) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 12\(8\)\(b\)](#), [59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)
- F78** Words in Sch. A1 para. 113(1)(c) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 12\(8\)\(c\)](#), [59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)
- F79** Sch. A1 para. 113(2)(a) repealed (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 12\(9\)](#), [57\(2\)](#), [59\(2\)-\(4\)](#), [Sch. 2](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 114 (1) An application under paragraph 112 is not admissible unless the CAC decides that—
- (a) at least 10 per cent of the workers constituting the bargaining unit favour an end of the bargaining arrangements, and
  - (b) a majority of the workers constituting the bargaining unit would be likely to favour an end of the bargaining arrangements.
- (2) The CAC must give reasons for the decision.
- 115 (1) The CAC must give notice to the worker (or workers), the employer and the union (or unions) of receipt of an application under paragraph 112.
- (2) Within the acceptance period the CAC must decide whether the application is admissible within the terms of paragraphs 112 to 114.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (3) In deciding whether the application is admissible the CAC must consider any evidence which it has been given by the employer, the union (or unions) or any of the workers falling within the bargaining unit.
  - (4) If the CAC decides that the application is not admissible—
    - (a) the CAC must give notice of its decision to the worker (or workers), the employer and the union (or unions),
    - (b) the CAC must not accept the application, and
    - (c) no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
  - (5) If the CAC decides that the application is admissible it must—
    - (a) accept the application, and
    - (b) give notice of the acceptance to the worker (or workers), the employer and the union (or unions).
  - (6) The acceptance period is—
    - (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC receives the application, or
    - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the worker (or workers), the employer and the union (or unions) by notice containing reasons for the extension.
- 116 (1) If the CAC accepts the application, in the negotiation period the CAC must help the employer, the union (or unions) and the worker (or workers) with a view to—
- (a) the employer and the union (or unions) agreeing to end the bargaining arrangements, or
  - (b) the worker (or workers) withdrawing the application.
- (2) The negotiation period is—
- (a) the period of 20 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC gives notice of acceptance of the application, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may decide with the consent of the worker (or workers), the employer and the union (or unions).

#### *Ballot on derecognition*

- 117 (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC accepts an application under paragraph 106 or 107.
- (2) This paragraph also applies if—
- (a) the CAC accepts an application under paragraph 112, and
  - (b) in the period mentioned in paragraph 116(1) there is no agreement or withdrawal as there described.
- (3) The CAC must arrange for the holding of a secret ballot in which the workers constituting the bargaining unit are asked whether the bargaining arrangements should be ended.
- (4) The ballot must be conducted by a qualified independent person appointed by the CAC.
- (5) The ballot must be conducted within—
- (a) the period of 20 working days starting with the day after that on which the qualified independent person is appointed, or

---

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

---

- (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may decide.
- (6) The ballot must be conducted—
- (a) at a workplace or workplaces decided by the CAC,
  - (b) by post, or
  - (c) by a combination of the methods described in sub-paragraphs (a) and (b), depending on the CAC's preference.
- (7) In deciding how the ballot is to be conducted the CAC must take into account—
- (a) the likelihood of the ballot being affected by unfairness or malpractice if it were conducted at a workplace or workplaces;
  - (b) costs and practicality;
  - (c) such other matters as the CAC considers appropriate.
- (8) The CAC may not decide that the ballot is to be conducted as mentioned in sub-paragraph (6)(c) unless there are special factors making such a decision appropriate; and special factors include—
- (a) factors arising from the location of workers or the nature of their employment;
  - (b) factors put to the CAC by the employer or the union (or unions).
- [<sup>F80</sup>(8A) If the CAC decides that the ballot must (in whole or in part) be conducted at a workplace (or workplaces), it may require arrangements to be made for workers—
- (a) who (but for the arrangements) would be prevented by the CAC's decision from voting by post, and
  - (b) who are unable, for reasons relating to those workers as individuals, to cast their votes in the ballot at the workplace (or at any of them),
- to be given the opportunity (if they request it far enough in advance of the ballot for this to be practicable) to vote by post; and the CAC's imposing such a requirement is not to be treated for the purposes of sub-paragraph (8) as a decision that the ballot be conducted as mentioned in sub-paragraph (6)(c).]
- (9) A person is a qualified independent person if—
- (a) he satisfies such conditions as may be specified for the purposes of this paragraph by order of the Secretary of State or is himself so specified, and
  - (b) there are no grounds for believing either that he will carry out any functions conferred on him in relation to the ballot otherwise than competently or that his independence in relation to the ballot might reasonably be called into question.
- (10) An order under sub-paragraph (9)(a) shall be made by statutory instrument subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (11) As soon as is reasonably practicable after the CAC is required under sub-paragraph (3) to arrange for the holding of a ballot it must inform the employer and the union (or unions)—
- (a) that it is so required;
  - (b) of the name of the person appointed to conduct the ballot and the date of his appointment;
  - (c) of the period within which the ballot must be conducted;
  - (d) whether the ballot is to be conducted by post or at a workplace or workplaces;

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (e) of the workplace or workplaces concerned (if the ballot is to be conducted at a workplace or workplaces).

#### Textual Amendments

**F80** Sch. A1 para. 117(8A) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 8(2), 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2005/872, art. 4, Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 118 (1) An employer who is informed by the CAC under paragraph 117(11) must comply with the following [<sup>F81</sup>five] duties.
- (2) The first duty is to co-operate generally, in connection with the ballot, with the union (or unions) and the person appointed to conduct the ballot; and the second and third duties are not to prejudice the generality of this.
- (3) The second duty is to give to the union (or unions) such access to the workers constituting the bargaining unit as is reasonable to enable the union (or unions) to inform the workers of the object of the ballot and to seek their support and their opinions on the issues involved.
- (4) The third duty is to do the following (so far as it is reasonable to expect the employer to do so)—
- (a) to give to the CAC, within the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the employer is informed under paragraph 117(11), the names and home addresses of the workers constituting the bargaining unit;
  - (b) to give to the CAC, as soon as is reasonably practicable, the name and home address of any worker who joins the unit after the employer has complied with paragraph (a);
  - (c) to inform the CAC, as soon as is reasonably practicable, of any worker whose name has been given to the CAC under paragraph (a) or (b) but who ceases to be within the unit.
- [<sup>F82</sup>4A) The fourth duty is to refrain from making any offer to any or all of the workers constituting the bargaining unit which—
- (a) has or is likely to have the effect of inducing any or all of them not to attend any relevant meeting between the union (or unions) and the workers constituting the bargaining unit, and
  - (b) is not reasonable in the circumstances.
- (4B) The fifth duty is to refrain from taking or threatening to take any action against a worker solely or mainly on the grounds that he—
- (a) attended or took part in any relevant meeting between the union (or unions) and the workers constituting the bargaining unit, or
  - (b) indicated his intention to attend or take part in such a meeting.
- (4C) A meeting is a relevant meeting in relation to a worker for the purposes of subparagraph (4A) and (4B) if—
- (a) it is organised in accordance with any agreement reached concerning the second duty or as a result of a step ordered to be taken under paragraph 119 to remedy a failure to comply with that duty, and
  - (b) it is one which the employer is, by such an agreement or order as is mentioned in paragraph (a), required to permit the worker to attend.



**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (4D) Without prejudice to the generality of the second duty imposed by this paragraph, an employer is to be taken to have failed to comply with that duty if—
- (a) he refuses a request for a meeting between the union (or unions) and any or all of the workers constituting the bargaining unit to be held in the absence of the employer or any representative of his (other than one who has been invited to attend the meeting) and it is not reasonable in the circumstances for him to do so,
  - (b) he or a representative of his attends such a meeting without having been invited to do so,
  - (c) he seeks to record or otherwise be informed of the proceedings at any such meeting and it is not reasonable in the circumstances for him to do so, or
  - (d) he refuses to give an undertaking that he will not seek to record or otherwise be informed of the proceedings at any such meeting unless it is reasonable in the circumstances for him to do either of those things.
- (4E) The fourth and fifth duties do not confer any rights on a worker; but that does not affect any other right which a worker may have.]
- (5) As soon as is reasonably practicable after the CAC receives any information under sub-paragraph (4) it must pass it on to the person appointed to conduct the ballot.
- (6) If asked to do so by the union (or unions) the person appointed to conduct the ballot must send to any worker—
- (a) whose name and home address have been given under sub-paragraph (5), and
  - (b) who is still within the unit (so far as the person so appointed is aware),
- any information supplied by the union (or unions) to the person so appointed.
- (7) The duty under sub-paragraph (6) does not apply unless the union bears (or unions bear) the cost of sending the information.
- [<sup>F83</sup>(8) Each of the powers specified in sub-paragraph (9) shall be taken to include power to issue Codes of Practice—
- (a) about reasonable access for the purposes of sub-paragraph (3), and
  - (b) about the fourth duty imposed by this paragraph.
- (9) The powers are—
- (a) the power of ACAS under section 199(1);
  - (b) the power of the Secretary of State under section 203(1)(a).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F81** Word in Sch. A1 para. 118(1) substituted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 9(7)**, 59(2)-(4); [S.I. 2005/2419](#), **art. 3(a)** (with arts. 5-7)
- F82** Sch. A1 para. 118(4A)-(4E) inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 9(8)**, 59(2)-(4); [S.I. 2005/2419](#), **art. 3(a)** (with arts. 5-7)
- F83** Sch. A1 para. 118(8)(9) substituted for Sch. A1 para. 118(8) (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 9(9)**, 59(2)-(4); [S.I. 2005/2419](#), **art. 3(a)** (with arts. 5-7)

- 119 (1) If the CAC is satisfied that the employer has failed to fulfil any of the [<sup>F84</sup>duties imposed on him] by paragraph 118, and the ballot has not been held, the CAC may order the employer—

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (a) to take such steps to remedy the failure as the CAC considers reasonable and specifies in the order, and
  - (b) to do so within such period as the CAC considers reasonable and specifies in the order.
- (2) If—
- (a) the ballot has been arranged in consequence of an application under paragraph 106 or 107,
  - (b) the CAC is satisfied that the employer has failed to comply with an order under sub-paragraph (1), and
  - (c) the ballot has not been held,
- the CAC may refuse the application.
- (3) <sup>F85</sup> .....
- (4) If the CAC refuses an application under sub-paragraph (2) it shall take steps to cancel the holding of the ballot; and if the ballot is held it shall have no effect.

#### Textual Amendments

**F84** Words in Sch. A1 para. 119(1) substituted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 9\(10\), 59\(2\)-\(4\); S.I. 2005/2419, art. 3](#) (with arts. 5-7)

**F85** Sch. A1 para. 119(3) repealed (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 57\(1\)\(2\), 59\(2\)-\(4\), Sch. 1 para. 23\(22\), Sch. 2; S.I. 2005/2419, art. 3](#) (with arts. 5-7)

<sup>F86</sup>119(A) Each of the parties informed by the CAC under paragraph 117(11) must refrain from using any unfair practice.

- (2) A party uses an unfair practice if, with a view to influencing the result of the ballot, the party—
- (a) offers to pay money or give money’s worth to a worker entitled to vote in the ballot in return for the worker’s agreement to vote in a particular way or to abstain from voting,
  - (b) makes an outcome-specific offer to a worker entitled to vote in the ballot,
  - (c) coerces or attempts to coerce a worker entitled to vote in the ballot to disclose—
    - (i) whether he intends to vote or to abstain from voting in the ballot, or
    - (ii) how he intends to vote, or how he has voted, in the ballot,
  - (d) dismisses or threatens to dismiss a worker,
  - (e) takes or threatens to take disciplinary action against a worker,
  - (f) subjects or threatens to subject a worker to any other detriment, or
  - (g) uses or attempts to use undue influence on a worker entitled to vote in the ballot.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(b) an “outcome-specific offer” is an offer to pay money or give money’s worth which—
- (a) is conditional on—
    - (i) the issuing by the CAC of a declaration that the bargaining arrangements are to cease to have effect, or
    - (ii) the refusal by the CAC of an application under paragraph 106, 107 or 112, and

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (b) is not conditional on anything which is done or occurs as a result of that declaration or, as the case may be, of that refusal.
- (4) The duty imposed by this paragraph does not confer any rights on a worker; but that does not affect any other right which a worker may have.
- (5) Each of the following powers shall be taken to include power to issue Codes of Practice about unfair practices for the purposes of this paragraph—
  - (a) the power of ACAS under section 199(1);
  - (b) the power of the Secretary of State under section 203(1)(a).

#### Textual Amendments

**F86** Sch. A1 paras. 119A-119I inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 13(1), 59(2)-(4)**; [S.I. 2005/2419](#), **art. 3** (with arts. 5-7)

- 119B (1) A party may complain to the CAC that another party has failed to comply with paragraph 119A.
- (2) A complaint under sub-paragraph (1) must be made on or before the first working day after—
    - (a) the date of the ballot, or
    - (b) if votes may be cast in the ballot on more than one day, the last of those days.
  - (3) Within the decision period the CAC must decide whether the complaint is well-founded.
  - (4) A complaint is well-founded if—
    - (a) the CAC finds that the party complained against used an unfair practice, and
    - (b) the CAC is satisfied that the use of that practice changed or was likely to change, in the case of a worker entitled to vote in the ballot—
      - (i) his intention to vote or to abstain from voting,
      - (ii) his intention to vote in a particular way, or
      - (iii) how he voted.
  - (5) The decision period is—
    - (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the complaint under sub-paragraph (1) was received by the CAC, or
    - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by a notice containing reasons for the extension.
  - (6) If, at the beginning of the decision period, the ballot has not begun, the CAC may by notice to the parties and the qualified independent person postpone the date on which it is to begin until a date which falls after the end of the decision period.

#### Textual Amendments

**F86** Sch. A1 paras. 119A-119I inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 13(1), 59(2)-(4)**; [S.I. 2005/2419](#), **art. 3** (with arts. 5-7)

- 119C (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC decides that a complaint under paragraph 119B is well-founded.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (2) The CAC must, as soon as is reasonably practicable, issue a declaration to that effect.
- (3) The CAC may do either or both of the following—
  - (a) order the party concerned to take any action specified in the order within such period as may be so specified, or
  - (b) make arrangements for the holding of a secret ballot in which the workers constituting the bargaining unit are asked whether the bargaining arrangements should be ended.
- (4) The CAC may give an order or make arrangements under sub-paragraph (3) either at the same time as it issues the declaration under sub-paragraph (2) or at any other time before it acts under paragraph 121.
- (5) The action specified in an order under sub-paragraph (3)(a) shall be such as the CAC considers reasonable in order to mitigate the effect of the failure of the party complained against to comply with the duty imposed by paragraph 119A.
- (6) The CAC may give more than one order under sub-paragraph (3)(a).

#### Textual Amendments

**F86** Sch. A1 paras. 119A-119I inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 13(1), 59(2)-(4)**; [S.I. 2005/2419](#), **art. 3** (with **arts. 5-7**)

- 119D (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC issues a declaration under paragraph 119C(2) and the declaration states that the unfair practice used consisted of or included—
- (a) the use of violence, or
  - (b) the dismissal of a union official.
- (2) This paragraph also applies if the CAC has made an order under paragraph 119C(3)
- (a) and—
    - (a) it is satisfied that the party subject to the order has failed to comply with it, or
    - (b) it makes another declaration under paragraph 119C(2) in relation to a complaint against that party.
  - (3) If the party concerned is the employer, the CAC may refuse the employer's application under paragraph 106 or 107.
  - (4) If the party concerned is a union, the CAC may issue a declaration that the bargaining arrangements are to cease to have effect on a date specified by the CAC in the declaration.
  - (5) If a declaration is issued under sub-paragraph (4) the bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect accordingly.
  - (6) The powers conferred by this paragraph are in addition to those conferred by paragraph 119C(3).

#### Textual Amendments

**F86** Sch. A1 paras. 119A-119I inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 13(1), 59(2)-(4)**; [S.I. 2005/2419](#), **art. 3** (with **arts. 5-7**)

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- 119E (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC issues a declaration that a complaint under paragraph 119B is well-founded and—
- (a) makes arrangements under paragraph 119C(3)(b),
  - (b) refuses under paragraph 119D(3) or 119H(6) an application under paragraph 106, 107 or 112, or
  - (c) issues a declaration under paragraph 119D(4) or 119H(5).
- (2) If the ballot in connection with which the complaint was made has not been held, the CAC shall take steps to cancel it.
- (3) If that ballot is held, it shall have no effect.

#### Textual Amendments

**F86** Sch. A1 paras. 119A-119I inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 13\(1\), 59\(2\)-\(4\); S.I. 2005/2419, art. 3](#) (with arts. 5-7)

- 119F (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC makes arrangements under paragraph 119C(3)(b).
- (2) Paragraphs 117(4) to (11) and 118 to 121 apply in relation to those arrangements as they apply in relation to arrangements made under paragraph 117(3) but with the modifications specified in sub-paragraphs (3) to (5).
- (3) An employer's duty under paragraph (a) of paragraph 118(4) is limited to—
- (a) giving the CAC the names and home addresses of any workers in the bargaining unit which have not previously been given to it in accordance with that duty;
  - (b) giving the CAC the names and home addresses of those workers who have joined the bargaining unit since he last gave the CAC information in accordance with that duty;
  - (c) informing the CAC of any change to the name or home address of a worker whose name and home address have previously been given to the CAC in accordance with that duty; and
  - (d) informing the CAC of any worker whose name had previously been given to it in accordance with that duty who has ceased to be within the bargaining unit.
- (4) Any order given under paragraph 119(1) or 119C(3)(a) for the purposes of the cancelled or ineffectual ballot shall have effect (to the extent that the CAC specifies in a notice to the parties) as if it were made for the purposes of the ballot for which arrangements are made under paragraph 119C(3)(b).
- (5) The gross costs of the ballot shall be borne by such of the parties and in such proportions as the CAC may determine and, accordingly, sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) of paragraph 120 shall be omitted and the reference in sub-paragraph (4) of that paragraph to the employer and the union (or each of the unions) shall be construed as a reference to the party or parties which bear the costs in accordance with the CAC's determination.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

#### Textual Amendments

**F86** Sch. A1 paras. 119A-119I inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 13\(1\), 59\(2\)-\(4\); S.I. 2005/2419, art. 3](#) (with arts. 5-7)

- 119G (1) Paragraphs 119A to 119C, 119E and 119F apply in relation to an application under paragraph 112 as they apply in relation to an application under paragraph 106 or 107 but with the modifications specified in this paragraph.
- (2) References in those paragraphs (and, accordingly, in paragraph 119H(3)) to a party shall be read as including references to the applicant worker or workers; but this is subject to sub-paragraph (3).
- (3) The reference in paragraph 119A(1) to a party informed under paragraph 117(11) shall be read as including a reference to the applicant worker or workers.

#### Textual Amendments

**F86** Sch. A1 paras. 119A-119I inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 13\(1\), 59\(2\)-\(4\); S.I. 2005/2419, art. 3](#) (with arts. 5-7)

- 119H (1) This paragraph applies in relation to an application under paragraph 112 in the cases specified in sub-paragraphs (2) and (3).
- (2) The first case is where the CAC issues a declaration under paragraph 119C(2) and the declaration states that the unfair practice used consisted of or included—
- (a) the use of violence, or
  - (b) the dismissal of a union official.
- (3) The second case is where the CAC has made an order under paragraph 119C(3)(a) and—
- (a) it is satisfied that the party subject to the order has failed to comply with it, or
  - (b) it makes another declaration under paragraph 119C(2) in relation to a complaint against that party.
- (4) If the party concerned is the employer, the CAC may order him to refrain from further campaigning in relation to the ballot.
- (5) If the party concerned is a union, the CAC may issue a declaration that the bargaining arrangements are to cease to have effect on a date specified by the CAC in the declaration.
- (6) If the party concerned is the applicant worker (or any of the applicant workers), the CAC may refuse the application under paragraph 112.
- (7) If a declaration is issued under sub-paragraph (5) the bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect accordingly.
- (8) The powers conferred by this paragraph are in addition to those conferred by paragraph 119C(3).

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

### Textual Amendments

**F86** Sch. A1 paras. 119A-119I inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 13\(1\), 59\(2\)-\(4\); S.I. 2005/2419, art. 3](#) (with arts. 5-7)

- 119I (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) a ballot has been arranged in consequence of an application under paragraph 112,
  - (b) the CAC has given the employer an order under paragraph 119(1), 119C(3) or 119H(4), and
  - (c) the ballot for the purposes of which the order was made (or any other ballot for the purposes of which it has effect) has not been held.
- (2) The applicant worker (or each of the applicant workers) and the union (or each of the unions) is entitled to enforce obedience to the order.
- (3) The order may be enforced—
- (a) in England and Wales, in the same way as an order of the county court;
  - (b) in Scotland, in the same way as an order of the sheriff.]

### Textual Amendments

**F86** Sch. A1 paras. 119A-119I inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 13\(1\), 59\(2\)-\(4\); S.I. 2005/2419, art. 3](#) (with arts. 5-7)

- 120 (1) This paragraph applies if the holding of a ballot has been arranged under paragraph 117(3), whether or not it has been cancelled.
- (2) The gross costs of the ballot shall be borne—
- (a) as to half, by the employer, and
  - (b) as to half, by the union (or unions).
- (3) If there is more than one union they shall bear their half of the gross costs—
- (a) in such proportions as they jointly indicate to the person appointed to conduct the ballot, or
  - (b) in the absence of such an indication, in equal shares.
- (4) The person appointed to conduct the ballot may send to the employer and the union (or each of the unions) a demand stating—
- (a) the gross costs of the ballot, and
  - (b) the amount of the gross costs to be borne by the recipient.
- (5) In such a case the recipient must pay the amount stated to the person sending the demand, and must do so within the period of 15 working days starting with the day after that on which the demand is received.
- (6) In England and Wales, if the amount stated is not paid in accordance with subparagraph (5) it shall, if [<sup>F87</sup> the county court ] so orders, be recoverable [<sup>F88</sup> under section 85 of the County Courts Act 1984 ] or otherwise as if it were payable under an order of that court.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

[<sup>F89</sup>(6A) [<sup>F90</sup> Where a warrant of control is issued under section 85 of the 1984 Act to recover an amount in accordance with sub-paragraph (6), the power conferred by the warrant is exercisable ] , to the same extent and in the same manner as if the union were a body corporate, against any property held in trust for the union other than protected property as defined in section 23(2).]

- (7) References to the costs of the ballot are to—
- (a) the costs wholly, exclusively and necessarily incurred in connection with the ballot by the person appointed to conduct it,
  - (b) such reasonable amount as the person appointed to conduct the ballot charges for his services, and
  - (c) such other costs as the employer and the union (or unions) agree.

#### Textual Amendments

- F87** Words in Sch. A1 para. 120(6) substituted (22.4.2014) by [Crime and Courts Act 2013 \(c. 22\), s. 61\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 52](#); S.I. 2014/954, art. 2(c) (with art. 3) (with transitional provisions and savings in S.I. 2014/956, arts. 3-11)
- F88** Words in Sch. A1 para. 120(6) substituted (6.4.2014) by [Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007 \(c. 15\), s. 148, Sch. 13 para. 111\(2\)](#) (with s. 89); S.I. 2014/768, art. 2(1)(b)
- F89** Sch. A1 para. 120(6A) inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 57\(1\), 59\(2\)-\(4\), Sch. 1 para. 23\(23\)](#); S.I. 2005/2419, art. 3(b) (with arts. 5-7)
- F90** Words in Sch. A1 para. 120(6A) substituted (6.4.2014) by [Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007 \(c. 15\), s. 148, Sch. 13 para. 111\(3\)](#) (with s. 89); S.I. 2014/768, art. 2(1)(b)

121 (1) As soon as is reasonably practicable after the CAC is informed of the result of a ballot by the person conducting it, the CAC must act under this paragraph.

[<sup>F91</sup>(1A) The duty in sub-paragraph (1) does not apply if the CAC makes arrangements under paragraph 119C(3)(b).]

- (2) The CAC must inform the employer and the union (or unions) of the result of the ballot.
- (3) If the result is that the proposition that the bargaining arrangements should be ended is supported by—
  - (a) a majority of the workers voting, and
  - (b) at least 40 per cent of the workers constituting the bargaining unit,
 the CAC must issue a declaration that the bargaining arrangements are to cease to have effect on a date specified by the CAC in the declaration.
- (4) If the result is otherwise the CAC must refuse the application under paragraph 106, 107 or 112.
- (5) If a declaration is issued under sub-paragraph (3) the bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect accordingly.
- (6) The Secretary of State may by order amend sub-paragraph (3) so as to specify a different degree of support; and different provision may be made for different circumstances.
- (7) An order under sub-paragraph (6) shall be made by statutory instrument.



**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (8) No such order shall be made unless a draft of it has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.

#### Textual Amendments

**F91** Sch. A1 para. 121(1A) inserted (1.10.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 13\(2\)](#), [59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/2419](#), [art. 3](#) (with [arts. 5-7](#))

## PART V

### DERECOGNITION WHERE RECOGNITION AUTOMATIC

#### *Introduction*

- 122 (1) This Part of this Schedule applies if—
- (a) the CAC has issued a declaration under paragraph [<sup>F92</sup>19F(5), 22(2), 27(2) or 27D(3)] that a union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a bargaining unit, and
  - (b) the parties have agreed under paragraph 30 or 31 a method by which they will conduct collective bargaining.
- (2) In such a case references in this Part of this Schedule to the bargaining arrangements are to—
- (a) the declaration, and
  - (b) the parties' agreement.

#### Textual Amendments

**F92** Words in Sch. A1 para. 122(1)(a) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 57\(1\)](#), [59\(2\)-\(4\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(24\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#) (with [arts. 6-21](#))

- 123 (1) This Part of this Schedule also applies if—
- (a) the CAC has issued a declaration under paragraph [<sup>F93</sup>19F(5), 22(2), 27(2) or 27D(3)] that a union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a bargaining unit, and
  - (b) the CAC has specified to the parties under paragraph 31(3) the method by which they are to conduct collective bargaining.
- (2) In such a case references in this Part of this Schedule to the bargaining arrangements are to—
- (a) the declaration, and
  - (b) anything effective as, or as if contained in, a legally enforceable contract by virtue of paragraph 31.

#### Textual Amendments

**F93** Words in Sch. A1 para. 123(1)(a) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 57\(1\)](#), [59\(2\)-\(4\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(25\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#) (with [arts. 6-21](#))

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- 124 (1) This Part of this Schedule also applies if the CAC has issued a declaration under paragraph 87(2) that a union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a bargaining unit.
- (2) In such a case references in this Part of this Schedule to the bargaining arrangements are to —
- (a) the declaration, and
  - (b) paragraph 87(6)(b).
- 125 For the purposes of this Part of this Schedule the relevant date is the date of the expiry of the period of 3 years starting with the date of the CAC's declaration.
- 126 References in this Part of this Schedule to the parties are to the employer and the union (or unions) concerned.

*Employer's request to end arrangements*

- 127 (1) The employer may after the relevant date request the union (or each of the unions) to agree to end the bargaining arrangements.
- (2) The request is not valid unless it—
- (a) is in writing,
  - (b) is received by the union (or each of the unions),
  - (c) identifies the bargaining arrangements,
  - (d) states that it is made under this Schedule, and
  - (e) states that fewer than half of the workers constituting the bargaining unit are members of the union (or unions).
- 128 (1) If before the end of the negotiation period the parties agree to end the bargaining arrangements no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
- (2) If no such agreement is made before the end of the negotiation period, the employer may apply to the CAC for the holding of a secret ballot to decide whether the bargaining arrangements should be ended.
- (3) The negotiation period is the period of 10 working days starting with the day after—
- (a) the day on which the union receives the request, or
  - (b) the last day on which any of the unions receives the request;
- or such longer period (so starting) as the parties may from time to time agree.
- 129 (1) An application under paragraph 128 is not admissible unless—
- (a) it is made in such form as the CAC specifies, and
  - (b) it is supported by such documents as the CAC specifies.
- (2) An application under paragraph 128 is not admissible unless the employer gives to the union (or each of the unions)—
- (a) notice of the application, and
  - (b) a copy of the application and any documents supporting it.
- 130 (1) An application under paragraph 128 is not admissible if—
- (a) a relevant application was made [<sup>F94</sup>, or a notice under paragraph 99(2) was given,] within the period of 3 years prior to the date of the application under paragraph 128,

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) the relevant application [<sup>F95</sup>, or notice under paragraph 99(2),] and the application under paragraph 128 relate to the same bargaining unit, and
  - (c) the CAC accepted the relevant application [<sup>F96</sup> or (as the case may be) decided under paragraph 100 that the notice complied with paragraph 99(3)].
- (2) A relevant application is an application made to the CAC—
- (a) <sup>F97</sup> .....
  - (b) by the employer under paragraph 106, 107 or 128, or
  - (c) by a worker (or workers) under paragraph 112.

#### Textual Amendments

- F94** Words in Sch. A1 para. 130(1)(a) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 12(8)(a)**, 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2005/872, **art. 4**, Sch. (with arts. 6-21)
- F95** Words in Sch. A1 para. 130(1)(b) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 12(8)(b)**, 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2005/872, **art. 4**, Sch. (with arts. 6-21)
- F96** Words in Sch. A1 para. 130(1)(c) inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 12(8)(c)**, 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2005/872, **art. 4**, Sch. (with arts. 6-21)
- F97** Sch. A1 para. 130(2)(a) repealed (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 12(9)**, 57(2), 59(2)-(4), **Sch. 2**; S.I. 2005/872, **art. 4**, Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 131 (1) An application under paragraph 128 is not admissible unless the CAC is satisfied that fewer than half of the workers constituting the bargaining unit are members of the union (or unions).
- (2) The CAC must give reasons for the decision.
- 132 (1) The CAC must give notice to the parties of receipt of an application under paragraph 128.
- (2) Within the acceptance period the CAC must decide whether—
- (a) the request is valid within the terms of paragraph 127, and
  - (b) the application is admissible within the terms of paragraphs 129 to 131.
- (3) In deciding those questions the CAC must consider any evidence which it has been given by the parties.
- (4) If the CAC decides that the request is not valid or the application is not admissible—
- (a) the CAC must give notice of its decision to the parties,
  - (b) the CAC must not accept the application, and
  - (c) no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
- (5) If the CAC decides that the request is valid and the application is admissible it must—
- (a) accept the application, and
  - (b) give notice of the acceptance to the parties.
- (6) The acceptance period is—
- (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC receives the application, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the parties by notice containing reasons for the extension.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

### *Ballot on derecognition*

- 133 (1) Paragraph 117 applies if the CAC accepts an application under paragraph 128 (as well as in the cases mentioned in paragraph 117(1) and (2)).
- (2) Paragraphs 118 to 121 apply accordingly, but as if—
- (a) the [<sup>F98</sup>references in paragraphs 119(2)(a) and 119D(3)] to paragraph 106 or 107 were to paragraph 106, 107 or 128;
  - (b) the [<sup>F99</sup>references in paragraphs 119A(3)(a)(ii), 119E(1)(b) and 121(4)] to paragraph 106, 107 or 112 were to paragraph 106, 107, 112 or 128.

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F98** Words in Sch. A1 para. 133(2)(a) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(26\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)
- F99** Words in Sch. A1 para. 133(2)(b) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(26\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

## **PART VI**

### **DERECOGNITION WHERE UNION NOT INDEPENDENT**

#### *Introduction*

- 134 (1) This Part of this Schedule applies if—
- (a) an employer and a union (or unions) have agreed that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a group or groups of workers, and
  - (b) the union does not have (or none of the unions has) a certificate [<sup>F100</sup>of independence].
- (2) In such a case references in this Part of this Schedule to the bargaining arrangements are to—
- (a) the parties' agreement mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a), and
  - (b) any agreement between the parties as to the method by which they will conduct collective bargaining.
- 135 In this Part of this Schedule—
- (a) references to the parties are to the employer and the union (or unions);
  - (b) references to the bargaining unit are to the group of workers referred to in paragraph 134(1)(a) (or the groups taken together).
- 136 The meaning of collective bargaining given by section 178(1) shall not apply in relation to this Part of this Schedule.

#### *Workers' application to end arrangements*

- 137 (1) A worker or workers falling within the bargaining unit may apply to the CAC to have the bargaining arrangements ended.
- (2) An application is not admissible unless—
- (a) it is made in such form as the CAC specifies, and

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (b) it is supported by such documents as the CAC specifies.
  - (3) An application is not admissible unless the worker gives (or workers give) to the employer and to the union (or each of the unions)—
    - (a) notice of the application, and
    - (b) a copy of the application and any documents supporting it.
- 138 An application under paragraph 137 is not admissible if the CAC is satisfied that any of the unions has a certificate [<sup>F101</sup>of independence].

#### Textual Amendments

**F101** Words in Sch. A1 para. 138 substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\), ss. 50\(6\), 59\(2\)-\(4\); S.I. 2005/872, art. 4, Sch.](#) (with arts. 6-21)

- 139 (1) An application under paragraph 137 is not admissible unless the CAC decides that—
  - (a) at least 10 per cent of the workers constituting the bargaining unit favour an end of the bargaining arrangements, and
  - (b) a majority of the workers constituting the bargaining unit would be likely to favour an end of the bargaining arrangements.
- (2) The CAC must give reasons for the decision.
- 140 An application under paragraph 137 is not admissible if the CAC is satisfied that—
  - (a) the union (or any of the unions) has made an application to the Certification Officer under section 6 for a certificate that it is independent, and
  - (b) the Certification Officer has not come to a decision on the application (or each of the applications).
- 141 (1) The CAC must give notice to the worker (or workers), the employer and the union (or unions) of receipt of an application under paragraph 137.
- (2) Within the acceptance period the CAC must decide whether the application is admissible within the terms of paragraphs 137 to 140.
- (3) In deciding whether the application is admissible the CAC must consider any evidence which it has been given by the employer, the union (or unions) or any of the workers falling within the bargaining unit.
- (4) If the CAC decides that the application is not admissible—
  - (a) the CAC must give notice of its decision to the worker (or workers), the employer and the union (or unions),
  - (b) the CAC must not accept the application, and
  - (c) no further steps are to be taken under this Part of this Schedule.
- (5) If the CAC decides that the application is admissible it must—
  - (a) accept the application, and
  - (b) give notice of the acceptance to the worker (or workers), the employer and the union (or unions).
- (6) The acceptance period is—
  - (a) the period of 10 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC receives the application, or

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may specify to the worker (or workers), the employer and the union (or unions) by notice containing reasons for the extension.
- 142 (1) If the CAC accepts the application, in the negotiation period the CAC must help the employer, the union (or unions) and the worker (or workers) with a view to—
- (a) the employer and the union (or unions) agreeing to end the bargaining arrangements, or
  - (b) the worker (or workers) withdrawing the application.
- (2) The negotiation period is—
- (a) the period of 20 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC gives notice of acceptance of the application, or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may decide with the consent of the worker (or workers), the employer and the union (or unions).
- 143 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC accepts an application under paragraph 137,
  - (b) during the period mentioned in paragraph 142(1) or 145(3) the CAC is satisfied that the union (or each of the unions) has made an application to the Certification Officer under section 6 for a certificate that it is independent, that the application (or each of the applications) to the Certification Officer was made before the application under paragraph 137 and that the Certification Officer has not come to a decision on the application (or each of the applications), and
  - (c) at the time the CAC is so satisfied there has been no agreement or withdrawal as described in paragraph 142(1) or 145(3).
- (2) In such a case paragraph 142(1) or 145(3) shall cease to apply from the time when the CAC is satisfied as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(b).
- 144 (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC is subsequently satisfied that—
- (a) the Certification Officer has come to a decision on the application (or each of the applications) mentioned in paragraph 143(1)(b), and
  - (b) his decision is that the union (or any of the unions) which made an application under section 6 is independent.
- (2) In such a case—
- (a) the CAC must give the worker (or workers), the employer and the union (or unions) notice that it is so satisfied, and
  - (b) the application under paragraph 137 shall be treated as not having been made.
- 145 (1) This paragraph applies if the CAC is subsequently satisfied that—
- (a) the Certification Officer has come to a decision on the application (or each of the applications) mentioned in paragraph 143(1)(b), and
  - (b) his decision is that the union (or each of the unions) which made an application under section 6 is not independent.
- (2) The CAC must give the worker (or workers), the employer and the union (or unions) notice that it is so satisfied.
- (3) In the new negotiation period the CAC must help the employer, the union (or unions) and the worker (or workers) with a view to—

---

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

---

- (a) the employer and the union (or unions) agreeing to end the bargaining arrangements, or
  - (b) the worker (or workers) withdrawing the application.
- (4) The new negotiation period is—
- (a) the period of 20 working days starting with the day after that on which the CAC gives notice under sub-paragraph (2), or
  - (b) such longer period (so starting) as the CAC may decide with the consent of the worker (or workers), the employer and the union (or unions).
- 146 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) the CAC accepts an application under paragraph 137,
  - (b) paragraph 143 does not apply, and
  - (c) during the relevant period the CAC is satisfied that a certificate of independence has been issued to the union (or any of the unions) under section 6.
- (2) In such a case the relevant period is the period starting with the first day of the negotiation period (as defined in paragraph 142(2)) and ending with the first of the following to occur—
- (a) any agreement by the employer and the union (or unions) to end the bargaining arrangements;
  - (b) any withdrawal of the application by the worker (or workers);
  - (c) the CAC being informed of the result of a relevant ballot by the person conducting it;
- and a relevant ballot is a ballot held by virtue of this Part of this Schedule.
- (3) This paragraph also applies if—
- (a) the CAC gives notice under paragraph 145(2), and
  - (b) during the relevant period the CAC is satisfied that a certificate of independence has been issued to the union (or any of the unions) under section 6.
- (4) In such a case, the relevant period is the period starting with the first day of the new negotiation period (as defined in paragraph 145(4)) and ending with the first of the following to occur—
- (a) any agreement by the employer and the union (or unions) to end the bargaining arrangements;
  - (b) any withdrawal of the application by the worker (or workers);
  - (c) the CAC being informed of the result of a relevant ballot by the person conducting it;
- and a relevant ballot is a ballot held by virtue of this Part of this Schedule.
- (5) If this paragraph applies—
- (a) the CAC must give the worker (or workers), the employer and the union (or unions) notice that it is satisfied as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(c) or (3)(b), and
  - (b) the application under paragraph 137 shall be treated as not having been made.

*Ballot on derecognition*

- 147 (1) Paragraph 117 applies if—

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (a) the CAC accepts an application under paragraph 137, and
  - (b) in the period mentioned in paragraph 142(1) or 145(3) there is no agreement or withdrawal as there described,
- (as well as in the cases mentioned in paragraph 117(1) and (2)).
- (2) Paragraphs 118 to 121 apply accordingly, but as if—
- (a) the <sup>F102</sup>references in paragraphs 119H(1) and 119I(1)(a)] to paragraph 112 were to paragraph 112 or 137;
  - (b) the <sup>F103</sup>references in paragraphs 119A(3)(a)(ii), 119E(1)(b) and 121(4)] to paragraph 106, 107 or 112 were to paragraph 106, 107, 112 or 137.
  - (c) the reference in paragraph 119(4) to the CAC refusing an application under paragraph 119(2) included a reference to it being required to give notice under paragraph 146(5).

#### Textual Amendments

**F102** Words in Sch. A1 para. 147(2)(a) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(27\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

**F103** Words in Sch. A1 para. 147(2)(b) substituted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 57(1), 59(2)-(4), [Sch. 1 para. 23\(27\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2005/872, [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

#### *Derecognition: other cases*

- 148 (1) This paragraph applies if as a result of a declaration by the CAC another union is (or other unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a group of workers at least one of whom falls within the bargaining unit.
- (2) The CAC must issue a declaration that the bargaining arrangements are to cease to have effect on a date specified by the CAC in the declaration.
- (3) If a declaration is issued under sub-paragraph (2) the bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect accordingly.
- (4) It is for the CAC to decide whether sub-paragraph (1) is fulfilled, but in deciding the CAC may take account of the views of any person it believes has an interest in the matter.

## PART VII

### LOSS OF INDEPENDENCE

#### *Introduction*

- 149 (1) This Part of this Schedule applies if the CAC has issued a declaration that a union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a bargaining unit.
- (2) In such a case references in this Part of this Schedule to the bargaining arrangements are to the declaration and to the provisions relating to the collective bargaining method.
- (3) For this purpose the provisions relating to the collective bargaining method are—



---

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

---

- (a) the parties' agreement as to the method by which collective bargaining is to be conducted,
  - (b) anything effective as, or as if contained in, a legally enforceable contract and relating to the method by which collective bargaining is to be conducted, or
  - (c) any provision of Part III of this Schedule that a method of collective bargaining is to have effect.
- 150 (1) This Part of this Schedule also applies if—
- (a) the parties have agreed that a union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of a bargaining unit,
  - (b) the CAC has specified to the parties under paragraph 63(2) the method by which they are to conduct collective bargaining, and
  - (c) the parties have not agreed in writing to replace the method or that paragraph 63(3) shall not apply.
- (2) In such a case references in this Part of this Schedule to the bargaining arrangements are to—
- (a) the parties' agreement mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a), and
  - (b) anything effective as, or as if contained in, a legally enforceable contract by virtue of paragraph 63.
- 151 References in this Part of this Schedule to the parties are to the employer and the union (or unions) concerned.

#### *Loss of certificate*

- 152 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) only one union is a party, and
  - (b) under section 7 the Certification Officer withdraws the union's certificate of independence.
- (2) This paragraph also applies if—
- (a) more than one union is a party, and
  - (b) under section 7 the Certification Officer withdraws the certificate of independence of each union (whether different certificates are withdrawn on the same or on different days).
- (3) Sub-paragraph (4) shall apply on the day after—
- (a) the day on which the Certification Officer informs the union (or unions) of the withdrawal (or withdrawals), or
  - (b) if there is more than one union, and he informs them on different days, the last of those days.
- (4) The bargaining arrangements shall cease to have effect; and the parties shall be taken to agree that the union is (or unions are) recognised as entitled to conduct collective bargaining on behalf of the bargaining unit concerned.

#### *Certificate re-issued*

- 153 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) only one union is a party,
  - (b) paragraph 152 applies, and

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (c) as a result of an appeal under section 9 against the decision to withdraw the certificate, the Certification Officer issues a certificate that the union is independent.
- (2) This paragraph also applies if—
  - (a) more than one union is a party,
  - (b) paragraph 152 applies, and
  - (c) as a result of an appeal under section 9 against a decision to withdraw a certificate, the Certification Officer issues a certificate that any of the unions concerned is independent.
- (3) Sub-paragraph (4) shall apply, beginning with the day after—
  - (a) the day on which the Certification Officer issues the certificate, or
  - (b) if there is more than one union, the day on which he issues the first or only certificate.
- (4) The bargaining arrangements shall have effect again; and paragraph 152 shall cease to apply.

#### *Miscellaneous*

- 154 Parts III to VI of this Schedule shall not apply in the case of the parties at any time when, by virtue of this Part of this Schedule, the bargaining arrangements do not have effect.
- 155 If—
- (a) by virtue of paragraph 153 the bargaining arrangements have effect again beginning with a particular day, and
  - (b) in consequence section 70B applies in relation to the bargaining unit concerned,
- for the purposes of section 70B(3) that day shall be taken to be the day on which section 70B first applies in relation to the unit.

### **PART VIII**

#### DETRIMENT

##### *Detriment*

- 156 (1) A worker has a right not to be subjected to any detriment by any act, or any deliberate failure to act, by his employer if the act or failure takes place on any of the grounds set out in sub-paragraph (2).
- (2) The grounds are that—
- (a) the worker acted with a view to obtaining or preventing recognition of a union (or unions) by the employer under this Schedule;
  - (b) the worker indicated that he supported or did not support recognition of a union (or unions) by the employer under this Schedule;
  - (c) the worker acted with a view to securing or preventing the ending under this Schedule of bargaining arrangements;

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (d) the worker indicated that he supported or did not support the ending under this Schedule of bargaining arrangements;
  - (e) the worker influenced or sought to influence the way in which votes were to be cast by other workers in a ballot arranged under this Schedule;
  - (f) the worker influenced or sought to influence other workers to vote or to abstain from voting in such a ballot;
  - (g) the worker voted in such a ballot;
  - (h) the worker proposed to do, failed to do, or proposed to decline to do, any of the things referred to in paragraphs (a) to (g).
- (3) A ground does not fall within sub-paragraph (2) if it constitutes an unreasonable act or omission by the worker.
- (4) This paragraph does not apply if the worker is an employee and the detriment amounts to dismissal within the meaning of the Employment Rights Act 1996.
- (5) A worker may present a complaint to an employment tribunal on the ground that he has been subjected to a detriment in contravention of this paragraph.
- (6) Apart from the remedy by way of complaint as mentioned in sub-paragraph (5), a worker has no remedy for infringement of the right conferred on him by this paragraph.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C3 Sch. A1 para. 156 modified (6.6.2000) by S.I. 2000/1338, art. 3(1)(a)

- 157 (1) An employment tribunal shall not consider a complaint under paragraph 156 unless it is presented—
- (a) before the end of the period of 3 months starting with the date of the act or failure to which the complaint relates or, if that act or failure is part of a series of similar acts or failures (or both), the last of them, or
  - (b) where the tribunal is satisfied that it was not reasonably practicable for the complaint to be presented before the end of that period, within such further period as it considers reasonable.
- (2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)—
- (a) where an act extends over a period, the reference to the date of the act is a reference to the last day of that period;
  - (b) a failure to act shall be treated as done when it was decided on.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2), in the absence of evidence establishing the contrary an employer must be taken to decide on a failure to act—
- (a) when he does an act inconsistent with doing the failed act, or
  - (b) if he has done no such inconsistent act, when the period expires within which he might reasonably have been expected to do the failed act if it was to be done.
- [<sup>F104</sup>(4) Section 292A (extension of time limits to facilitate conciliation before institution of proceedings) applies for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(a).]

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

#### Textual Amendments

**F104** Sch. A1 para. 157(4) inserted (6.4.2014) by Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24), s. 103(3), Sch. 2 para. 14; S.I. 2014/253, art. 3(g)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C4** Sch. A1 para. 157 modified (6.6.2000) by S.I. 2000/1338, art. 3(1)(a)

158 On a complaint under paragraph 156 it shall be for the employer to show the ground on which he acted or failed to act.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C5** Sch A1 para. 158 modified (6.6.2000) by S.I. 2000/1338, art. 3(1)(a)

- 159 (1) If the employment tribunal finds that a complaint under paragraph 156 is well-founded it shall make a declaration to that effect and may make an award of compensation to be paid by the employer to the complainant in respect of the act or failure complained of.
- (2) The amount of the compensation awarded shall be such as the tribunal considers just and equitable in all the circumstances having regard to the infringement complained of and to any loss sustained by the complainant which is attributable to the act or failure which infringed his right.
- (3) The loss shall be taken to include—
- (a) any expenses reasonably incurred by the complainant in consequence of the act or failure complained of, and
  - (b) loss of any benefit which he might reasonably be expected to have had but for that act or failure.
- (4) In ascertaining the loss, the tribunal shall apply the same rule concerning the duty of a person to mitigate his loss as applies to damages recoverable under the common law of England and Wales or Scotland.
- (5) If the tribunal finds that the act or failure complained of was to any extent caused or contributed to by action of the complainant, it shall reduce the amount of the compensation by such proportion as it considers just and equitable having regard to that finding.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C6** Sch. A1 para. 159 modified (6.6.2000) by S.I. 2000/1338, art. 3(1)(a)

- 160 (1) If the employment tribunal finds that a complaint under paragraph 156 is well-founded and—
- (a) the detriment of which the worker has complained is the termination of his worker's contract, but
  - (b) that contract was not a contract of employment,
- any compensation awarded under paragraph 159 must not exceed the limit specified in sub-paragraph (2).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (2) The limit is the total of—
- (a) the sum which would be the basic award for unfair dismissal, calculated in accordance with section 119 of the Employment Rights Act 1996, if the worker had been an employee and the contract terminated had been a contract of employment, and
  - (b) the sum for the time being specified in section 124(1) of that Act which is the limit for a compensatory award to a person calculated in accordance with section 123 of that Act.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C7 Sch. A1 para. 160 modified (6.6.2000) by S.I. 2000/1338, art. 3(1)(a)

*Dismissal*

- 161 (1) For the purposes of Part X of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (unfair dismissal) the dismissal of an employee shall be regarded as unfair if the dismissal was made—
- (a) for a reason set out in sub-paragraph (2), or
  - (b) for reasons the main one of which is one of those set out in sub-paragraph (2).
- (2) The reasons are that—
- (a) the employee acted with a view to obtaining or preventing recognition of a union (or unions) by the employer under this Schedule;
  - (b) the employee indicated that he supported or did not support recognition of a union (or unions) by the employer under this Schedule;
  - (c) the employee acted with a view to securing or preventing the ending under this Schedule of bargaining arrangements;
  - (d) the employee indicated that he supported or did not support the ending under this Schedule of bargaining arrangements ;
  - (e) the employee influenced or sought to influence the way in which votes were to be cast by other workers in a ballot arranged under this Schedule;
  - (f) the employee influenced or sought to influence other workers to vote or to abstain from voting in such a ballot;
  - (g) the employee voted in such a ballot;
  - (h) the employee proposed to do, failed to do, or proposed to decline to do, any of the things referred to in paragraphs (a) to (g).
- (3) A reason does not fall within sub-paragraph (2) if it constitutes an unreasonable act or omission by the employee.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C8 Sch. A1 para. 161 modified (6.6.2000) S.I. 2000/1338, art. 3(1)(b)  
Sch. A1 paras. 161-165 applied (with modifications) (14.8.2000) by S.I. 2000/1828, art. 2(6)

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

### *Selection for redundancy*

- 162 For the purposes of Part X of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (unfair dismissal) the dismissal of an employee shall be regarded as unfair if the reason or principal reason for the dismissal was that he was redundant but it is shown—
- (a) that the circumstances constituting the redundancy applied equally to one or more other employees in the same undertaking who held positions similar to that held by him and who have not been dismissed by the employer, and
  - (b) that the reason (or, if more than one, the principal reason) why he was selected for dismissal was one falling within paragraph 161(2).

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C9** Sch. A1 para. 162 modified (6.6.2000) by [S.I. 2000/1338, art. 3\(1\)\(b\)](#)  
Sch. A1 paras. 161-165 applied (with modifications) (14.8.2000) by [S.I. 2000/1828, art. 2\(6\)](#)

### *Employees with fixed-term contracts*

- 163 Section 197(1) of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (fixed-term contracts) does not prevent Part X of that Act from applying to a dismissal which is regarded as unfair by virtue of paragraph 161 or 162.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C10** Sch. A1 paras. 161-165 applied (with modifications) (14.8.2000) by [S.I. 2000/1828, art. 2\(6\)](#)

### *Exclusion of requirement as to qualifying period*

- <sup>F105</sup>164 Sections 108 and 109 of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (qualifying period and upper age limit for unfair dismissal protection) do not apply to a dismissal which by virtue of paragraph 161 or 162 is regarded as unfair for the purposes of Part X of that Act.

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F105** Sch. A1 para. 161-165 applied (with modifications) (14.12.2000) by [S.I. 2000/1828, art. 2\(6\)](#)

### *Meaning of worker's contract*

- 165 References in this Part of this Schedule to a worker's contract are to the contract mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b) of section 296(1) or the arrangements for the employment mentioned in paragraph (c) of section 296(1).

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C11** Sch. A1 para. 161-165 applied (with modifications) (14.8.2000) by [S.I. 2000/1828, art. 2\(6\)](#)

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

## PART IX

### GENERAL

#### *F<sup>106</sup> Rights of appeal against demands for costs*

##### Textual Amendments

**F106** Sch. A1 para. 165A and preceding cross-heading inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004](#) (c. 24), [ss. 14, 59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 165A (1) This paragraph applies where a demand has been made under paragraph 19E(3), 28(4) or 120(4).
- (2) The recipient of the demand may appeal against the demand within 4 weeks starting with the day after receipt of the demand.
- (3) An appeal under this paragraph lies to an employment tribunal.
- (4) On an appeal under this paragraph against a demand under paragraph 19E(3), the tribunal shall dismiss the appeal unless it is shown that—
- (a) the amount specified in the demand as the costs of the appointed person is too great, or
  - (b) the amount specified in the demand as the amount of those costs to be borne by the recipient is too great.
- (5) On an appeal under this paragraph against a demand under paragraph 28(4) or paragraph 120(4), the tribunal shall dismiss the appeal unless it is shown that—
- (a) the amount specified in the demand as the gross costs of the ballot is too great, or
  - (b) the amount specified in the demand as the amount of the gross costs to be borne by the recipient is too great.
- (6) If an appeal is allowed, the tribunal shall rectify the demand and the demand shall have effect as if it had originally been made as so rectified.
- (7) If a person has appealed under this paragraph against a demand and the appeal has not been withdrawn or finally determined, the demand—
- (a) is not enforceable until the appeal has been withdrawn or finally determined, but
  - (b) as from the withdrawal or final determination of the appeal shall be enforceable as if paragraph (a) had not had effect.]

#### *Power to amend*

- 166<sup>F107</sup>(1) This paragraph applies if the CAC represents to the Secretary of State that a provision of this Schedule has an unsatisfactory effect and should be amended.
- (2) The Secretary of State, with a view to rectifying the effect—
- (a) may amend the provision by exercising (if applicable) any of the powers conferred on him by paragraphs 7(6), 29(5), 121(6), 166A, 166B, 169A, 169B and 171A, or
  - (b) may amend the provision by order in such other way as he thinks fit.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (2A) The Secretary of State need not proceed in a way proposed by the CAC (if it proposes one).
- (2B) Nothing in this paragraph prevents the Secretary of State from exercising any of the powers mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(a) in the absence of a representation from the CAC.]
- (3) An order under [<sup>F108</sup>sub-paragraph (2)(b)] shall be made by statutory instrument.
- (4) No such order shall be made unless a draft of it has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.

#### Textual Amendments

**F107** Sch. A1 paras. 166(1)-(2B) substituted for Sch. A1 paras. 166(1)(2) (31.12.2004) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 15(2)**, 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2004/3342, **art. 4(a)** (with arts. 6-12)

**F108** Words in Sch. A1 para. 166(3) substituted (31.12.2004) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 15(3)**, 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2004/3342, **art. 4(a)** (with arts. 6-12)

[<sup>F109</sup>166A] This paragraph applies in relation to any provision of paragraph 19D(2), 26(4) or 118(4) which requires the employer to give to the CAC a worker's home address.

- (2) The Secretary of State may by order provide that the employer must give to the CAC (in addition to the worker's home address) an address of a specified kind for the worker.
- (3) In this paragraph "address" includes any address or number to which information may be sent by any means.
- (4) An order under this paragraph may—
- amend this Schedule;
  - include supplementary or incidental provision (including, in particular, provision amending paragraph 19E(1)(a), 26(6)(a) or 118(6)(a));
  - make different provision for different cases or circumstances.
- (5) An order under this paragraph shall be made by statutory instrument.
- (6) No such order shall be made unless a draft of it has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F109** Sch. A1 para. 166A inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 16**, 59(2)-(4); S.I. 2005/872, **art. 4**, Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

[<sup>F110</sup>166B] The Secretary of State may by order provide that, during any period beginning and ending with the occurrence of specified events, employers and unions to which the order applies are prohibited from using such practices as are specified as unfair practices in relation to an application under this Schedule of a specified description.

- (2) An order under this paragraph may make provision about the consequences of a contravention of any prohibition imposed by the order (including provision modifying the effect of any provision of this Schedule in the event of such a contravention).



**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (3) An order under this paragraph may confer functions on the CAC.
- (4) An order under this paragraph may contain provision extending for the purposes of the order either or both of the following powers to issue Codes of Practice—
  - (a) the power of ACAS under section 199(1);
  - (b) the power of the Secretary of State under section 203(1)(a).
- (5) An order under this paragraph may—
  - (a) include supplementary or incidental provisions (including provision amending this Schedule), and
  - (b) make different provision for different cases or circumstances.
- (6) An order under this paragraph shall be made by statutory instrument.
- (7) No such order shall be made unless a draft of it has been laid before and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.
- (8) In this paragraph “specified” means specified in an order under this paragraph.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F110** Sch. A1 para. 166B inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 17**, 59(2)-(4); [S.I. 2005/872](#), **art. 4**, Sch. (with [arts. 6-21](#))

#### Guidance

- 167
- (1) The Secretary of State may issue guidance to the CAC on the way in which it is to exercise its functions under paragraph 22 or 87.
  - (2) The CAC must take into account any such guidance in exercising those functions.
  - (3) However, no guidance is to apply with regard to an application made to the CAC before the guidance in question was issued.
  - (4) The Secretary of State must—
    - (a) lay before each House of Parliament any guidance issued under this paragraph, and
    - (b) arrange for any such guidance to be published by such means as appear to him to be most appropriate for drawing it to the attention of persons likely to be affected by it.

#### Method of conducting collective bargaining

- 168
- (1) After consulting ACAS the Secretary of State may by order specify for the purposes of paragraphs 31(3) and 63(2) a method by which collective bargaining might be conducted.
  - (2) If such an order is made the CAC—
    - (a) must take it into account under paragraphs 31(3) and 63(2), but
    - (b) may depart from the method specified by the order to such extent as the CAC thinks it is appropriate to do so in the circumstances.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (3) An order under this paragraph shall be made by statutory instrument subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

*Directions about certain applications*

- 169 (1) The Secretary of State may make to the CAC directions as described in subparagraph (2) in relation to any case where—
- (a) two or more applications are made to the CAC,
  - (b) each application is a relevant application,
  - (c) each application relates to the same bargaining unit, and
  - (d) the CAC has not accepted any of the applications.
- (2) The directions are directions as to the order in which the CAC must consider the admissibility of the applications.
- (3) The directions may include—
- (a) provision to deal with a case where a relevant application is made while the CAC is still considering the admissibility of another one relating to the same bargaining unit;
  - (b) other incidental provisions.
- (4) A relevant application is an application under paragraph 101, 106, 107, 112 or 128.

*F<sup>III</sup> Effect of union amalgamations and transfers of engagements*

**Textual Amendments**

**F111** Sch. A1 paras. 169A-169C and preceding cross-headings inserted (31.12.2004) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 18, 59(2)-(4)**; S.I. 2004/3342, **art. 4** (with arts. 6-12)

- 169A (1) The Secretary of State may by order make provision for any case where—
- (a) an application has been made, a declaration has been issued, or any other thing has been done under or for the purposes of this Schedule by, to or in relation to a union, or
  - (b) anything has been done in consequence of anything so done,
- and the union amalgamates or transfers all or any of its engagements.
- (2) An order under this paragraph may, in particular, make provision for cases where an amalgamated union, or union to which engagements are transferred, does not have a certificate of independence.

*Effect of change of identity of employer*

- 169B (1) The Secretary of State may by order make provision for any case where—
- (a) an application has been made, a declaration has been issued, or any other thing has been done under or for the purposes of this Schedule in relation to a group of workers, or
  - (b) anything has been done in consequence of anything so done,
- and the person who was the employer of the workers constituting that group at the time the thing was done is no longer the employer of all of the workers constituting

---

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

---

that group (whether as a result of a transfer of the whole or part of an undertaking or business or otherwise).

(2) In this paragraph “group” includes two or more groups taken together.

*Orders under paragraphs 169A and 169B: supplementary*

169C (1) An order under paragraph 169A or 169B may—

- (a) amend this Schedule;
- (b) include supplementary, incidental, saving or transitional provisions;
- (c) make different provision for different cases or circumstances.

(2) An order under paragraph 169A or 169B shall be made by statutory instrument.

(3) No such order shall be made unless a draft of it has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.]

*Directions about certain applications*

169 (1) The Secretary of State may make to the CAC directions as described in subparagraph (2) in relation to any case where—

- (a) two or more applications are made to the CAC,
- (b) each application is a relevant application,
- (c) each application relates to the same bargaining unit, and
- (d) the CAC has not accepted any of the applications.

(2) The directions are directions as to the order in which the CAC must consider the admissibility of the applications.

(3) The directions may include—

- (a) provision to deal with a case where a relevant application is made while the CAC is still considering the admissibility of another one relating to the same bargaining unit;
- (b) other incidental provisions.

(4) A relevant application is an application under paragraph 101, 106, 107, 112 or 128.

*Notice of declarations*

170 (1) If the CAC issues a declaration under this Schedule it must notify the parties of the declaration and its contents.

(2) The reference here to the parties is to—

- (a) the union (or unions) concerned and the employer concerned, and
- (b) if the declaration is issued in consequence of an application by a worker or workers, the worker or workers making it.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

## *F<sup>112</sup> Supply of information to CAC*

### **Textual Amendments**

**F112** Sch. A1 para. 170A and preceding cross-heading inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004](#) (c. 24), [ss. 19, 59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with arts. 6-21)

- 170A (1) The CAC may, if it considers it necessary to do so to enable or assist it to exercise any of its functions under this Schedule, exercise any or all of the powers conferred in sub-paragraphs (2) to (4).
- (2) The CAC may require an employer to supply the CAC case manager, within such period as the CAC may specify, with specified information concerning either or both of the following—
- (a) the workers in a specified bargaining unit who work for the employer;
  - (b) the likelihood of a majority of those workers being in favour of the conduct by a specified union (or specified unions) of collective bargaining on their behalf.
- (3) The CAC may require a union to supply the CAC case manager, within such period as the CAC may specify, with specified information concerning either or both of the following—
- (a) the workers in a specified bargaining unit who are members of the union;
  - (b) the likelihood of a majority of the workers in a specified bargaining unit being in favour of the conduct by the union (or by it and other specified unions) of collective bargaining on their behalf.
- (4) The CAC may require an applicant worker to supply the CAC case manager, within such period as the CAC may specify, with specified information concerning the likelihood of a majority of the workers in his bargaining unit being in favour of having bargaining arrangements ended.
- (5) The recipient of a requirement under this paragraph must, within the specified period, supply the CAC case manager with such of the specified information as is in the recipient's possession.
- (6) From the information supplied to him under this paragraph, the CAC case manager must prepare a report and submit it to the CAC.
- (7) If an employer, a union or a worker fails to comply with sub-paragraph (5), the report under sub-paragraph (6) must mention that failure; and the CAC may draw an inference against the party concerned.
- (8) The CAC must give a copy of the report under sub-paragraph (6) to the employer, to the union (or unions) and, in the case of an application under paragraph 112 or 137, to the applicant worker (or applicant workers).
- (9) In this paragraph—
- “applicant worker” means a worker who—
- (a) falls within a bargaining unit (“his bargaining unit”) and
  - (b) has made an application under paragraph 112 or 137 to have bargaining arrangements ended;
- “the CAC case manager” means the member of the staff provided to the CAC by ACAS who is named in the requirement (but the CAC may, by

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

notice given to the recipient of a requirement under this paragraph, change the member of that staff who is to be the CAC case manager for the purposes of that requirement);

“collective bargaining” is to be construed in accordance with paragraph 3; and

“specified” means specified in a requirement under this paragraph.]

#### *CAC’s general duty*

171 In exercising functions under this Schedule in any particular case the CAC must have regard to the object of encouraging and promoting fair and efficient practices and arrangements in the workplace, so far as having regard to that object is consistent with applying other provisions of this Schedule in the case concerned.

#### *[<sup>F113</sup> “Pay” and other matters subject to collective bargaining*

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F113** Sch. A1 para. 171A and preceding cross-heading inserted (6.4.2005) by [Employment Relations Act 2004 \(c. 24\)](#), [ss. 20, 59\(2\)-\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/872](#), [art. 4](#), Sch. (with [arts. 6-21](#))

- 171A (1) In this Schedule “pay” does not include terms relating to a person’s membership of or rights under, or his employer’s contributions to—
- (a) an occupational pension scheme (as defined by section 1 of the Pension Schemes Act 1993), or
  - (b) a personal pension scheme (as so defined).
- (2) The Secretary of State may by order amend sub-paragraph (1).
- (3) The Secretary of State may by order—
- (a) amend paragraph 3(3), 54(4) or 94(6)(b) by adding specified matters relating to pensions to the matters there specified to which negotiations may relate;
  - (b) amend paragraph 35(2)(b) or 44(2)(b) by adding specified matters relating to pensions to the core topics there specified.
- (4) An order under this paragraph may—
- (a) include supplementary, incidental, saving or transitional provisions including provision amending this Schedule, and
  - (b) make different provision for different cases.
- (5) An order under this paragraph may make provision deeming—
- (a) the matters to which any pre-commencement declaration of recognition relates, and
  - (b) the matters to which any pre-commencement method of collective bargaining relates,
- to include matters to which a post-commencement declaration of recognition or method of collective bargaining could relate.
- (6) In sub-paragraph (5)—
- “pre-commencement declaration of recognition” means a declaration of recognition issued by the CAC before the coming into force of the order,

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

“pre-commencement method of collective bargaining” means a method of collective bargaining specified by the CAC before the coming into force of the order,

and references to a post-commencement declaration of recognition or method of collective bargaining shall be construed accordingly.

- (7) An order under this paragraph shall be made by statutory instrument; and no such order shall be made unless a draft of it has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.]

#### *General interpretation*

- 172 (1) References in this Schedule to the CAC are to the Central Arbitration Committee.
- (2) For the purposes of this Schedule in its application to a part of Great Britain a working day is a day other than—
- (a) a Saturday or a Sunday,
  - (b) Christmas day or Good Friday, or
  - (c) a day which is a bank holiday under the <sup>M1</sup>Banking and Financial Dealings Act 1971 in that part of Great Britain.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M1** 1971 c. 80.

## [<sup>F114</sup>SCHEDULE A2

Section 207A

### TRIBUNAL JURISDICTIONS TO WHICH SECTION 207A APPLIES

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F114** Sch. A2 inserted (6.4.2009) by [Employment Act 2008 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 3(3)**, 22(1)(a); S.I. 2008/3232, **art. 2** (with **art. 3**, Sch.)

**F115**  
...

**F115**  
...

**F115**  
...

Section 145A of this Act (inducements relating to union membership or activities)

Section 145B of this Act (inducements relating to collective bargaining)

Section 146 of this Act (detriment in relation to union membership and activities)

Paragraph 156 of Schedule A1 to this Act (detriment in relation to union recognition rights)

**F115**  
...

Section 23 of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (c. 18) (unauthorised deductions and payments)

[<sup>F116</sup>Section 27K of that Act (complaints about tips etc)]

[<sup>F116</sup>Section 27N of that Act (complaints about information)]

Section 48 of that Act (detriment in employment)

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Section 111 of that Act (unfair dismissal)  
Section 163 of that Act (redundancy payments)  
Section 24 of the National Minimum Wage Act 1998 (c. 39) (detriment in relation to national minimum wage)  
The Employment Tribunal Extension of Jurisdiction (England and Wales) Order 1994 (SI 1994/1623) (breach of employment contract and termination)  
The Employment Tribunal Extension of Jurisdiction (Scotland) Order 1994 (SI 1994/1624) (corresponding provision for Scotland)  
Regulation 30 of the Working Time Regulations 1998 (SI 1998/1833) (breach of regulations)  
Regulation 32 of the Transnational Information and Consultation of Employees Regulations 1999 (SI 1999/3323) (detriment relating to European Works Councils)  
F115  
...  
F115  
...  
Regulation 45 of the European Public Limited-Liability Company Regulations 2004 (SI 2004/2326) (detriment in employment)  
Regulation 33 of the Information and Consultation of Employees Regulations 2004 (SI 2004/3426) (detriment in employment)  
Paragraph 8 of the Schedule to the Occupational and Personal Pension Schemes (Consultation by Employers and Miscellaneous Amendment) Regulations 2006 (SI 2006/349) (detriment in employment)  
F115  
...  
Regulation 34 of the European Cooperative Society (Involvement of Employees) Regulations 2006 (SI 2006/2059) (detriment in relation to involvement in a European Cooperative Society)  
Regulation 17 of the Cross-border Railway Services (Working Time) Regulations 2008 (SI 2008/1660) (breach of regulations).  
[<sup>F117</sup>Regulation 9 of the Employment Relations Act 1999 (Blacklists) Regulations 2010 (SI 2010/493) (detriment connected with prohibited list).]  
[<sup>F118</sup>Sections 120 and 127 of the Equality Act 2010 (discrimination etc in work cases)]

#### Textual Amendments

- F115** Sch. A2: entries repealed (1.10.2010) by [Equality Act 2010 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 216(2), [Sch. 26 para. 24\(2\)](#), [Sch. 27 Pt. 1](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2010/2279](#), art. 1(2), Sch. 1 para. 5, [Sch. 2](#)); [S.I. 2010/2317](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(15\)\(e\)\(f\)](#))
- F116** Words in [Sch. A2](#) inserted (31.7.2023 for specified purposes) by [Employment \(Allocation of Tips\) Act 2023 \(c. 13\)](#), [ss. 12\(1\)](#), 14(2); [S.I. 2023/876](#), reg. 3(c)
- F117** Words in [Sch. A2](#) inserted (2.3.2010) by [The Employment Relations Act 1999 \(Blacklists\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/493\)](#), regs. 1(b), [17\(6\)](#))
- F118** Sch. A2: entry inserted (1.10.2010) by [Equality Act 2010 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 216(2), [Sch. 26 para. 24\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2010/2317](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(15\)\(e\)](#))

#### Textual Amendments

- F115** Sch. A2: entries repealed (1.10.2010) by [Equality Act 2010 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 216(2), [Sch. 26 para. 24\(2\)](#), [Sch. 27 Pt. 1](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2010/2279](#), art. 1(2), Sch. 1 para. 5, [Sch. 2](#)); [S.I. 2010/2317](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(15\)\(e\)\(f\)](#))

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- F116** Words in Sch. A2 inserted (31.7.2023 for specified purposes) by Employment (Allocation of Tips) Act 2023 (c. 13), ss. 12(1), 14(2); S.I. 2023/876, reg. 3(c)
- F117** Words in Sch. A2 inserted (2.3.2010) by The Employment Relations Act 1999 (Blacklists) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/493), regs. 1(b), 17(6)
- F118** Sch. A2: entry inserted (1.10.2010) by Equality Act 2010 (c. 15), s. 216(2), Sch. 26 para. 24(3); S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2(1)(15)(e)

## [F119] SCHEDULE A3

Section 256C

### CERTIFICATION OFFICER: INVESTIGATORY POWERS

#### Textual Amendments

- F119** Sch. A3 inserted (8.12.2021 for specified purposes, 1.4.2022 in so far as not already in force) by Trade Union Act 2016 (c. 15), s. 25(1), Sch. 1; S.I. 2021/1373, regs. 3(a), 4(b) (with regs. 5, 6)

#### Introduction

- 1 (1) The following are “relevant obligations” for the purposes of this Schedule—
- (a) any of the requirements of section 24(1) (duties regarding the register of members);
  - (b) the requirement of section 45B (duty to secure positions not held by certain offenders);
  - (c) any of the requirements of Chapter 4 of Part 1 (elections for certain positions);
  - (d) the restriction in section 71 on the application of a trade union's funds in the furtherance of political objects;
  - (e) any of the requirements of Chapter 6 of Part 1 about compliance with rules as to ballots on political resolutions;
  - (f) any of the requirements of a trade union's rules made in pursuance of section 82 (rules as to political fund);
  - (g) any of the requirements of sections 99 to 100E (ballots on amalgamations or transfers);
  - (h) any requirement of a conditional penalty order made under Schedule A4.
- (2) In relation to the relevant obligations listed in sub-paragraph (1)(d) to (g) as they apply to unincorporated employers' associations by virtue of section 132 or 133, this Schedule applies to an unincorporated employers' association as in relation to a trade union.
- (3) In its application to an unincorporated employers' association, this Schedule has effect—
- (a) with any necessary modifications, and
  - (b) with such modifications as may be prescribed.

#### Power of Certification Officer to require production of documents etc

- 2 (1) If the Certification Officer thinks there is good reason to do so, the Officer—



---

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

---

- (a) may give directions to a trade union, or a branch or section of a trade union, requiring it to produce such relevant documents as are specified in the directions;
  - (b) may authorise a member of the Officer's staff or any other person (“an authorised person”), on producing (if so required) evidence of that authority, to require a trade union, or a branch or section of a trade union, to produce immediately to the authorised person such relevant documents as that person specifies.
- (2) “Relevant documents”, in relation to a trade union or a branch or section of a trade union, means documents that in the opinion of the Certification Officer or authorised person may be relevant to whether the trade union has failed to comply with a relevant obligation.

Such documents may in particular include, in the case of a requirement of section 24(1), the register of the names and addresses of the union's members.

- (3) Directions under sub-paragraph (1)(a) must specify the time and place at which the documents are to be produced.
- (4) Where the Certification Officer, or an authorised person, has power to require the production of documents by virtue of sub-paragraph (1), the Officer or authorised person has the like power to require production of those documents from any person who appears to the Officer or authorised person to be in possession of them.
- (5) The power under this paragraph to require the production of documents includes the power—
- (a) if the documents are produced—
    - (i) to take copies of them or extracts from them;
    - (ii) to require the person by whom they are produced to provide an explanation of any of them;
    - (iii) to require any person who is or has been an official or agent of the trade union to provide an explanation of any of them;
  - (b) if the documents are not produced, to require the person who was required to produce them to state, to the best of the person's knowledge and belief, where they are.
- (6) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (5)(a)(iii), “agent” includes an assurer appointed by the trade union under section 24ZB.
- (7) For supplementary provision, see paragraph 6.

#### *Investigation by inspectors*

- 3 (1) If the Certification Officer has reasonable grounds to suspect that a trade union has failed to comply with a relevant obligation, the Officer may appoint one or more members of the Officer's staff or other persons as an inspector or inspectors—
- (a) to investigate whether the union has failed to comply with such an obligation, and
  - (b) to report to the Officer in such manner as the Officer may direct.
- (2) Where any person appears to the inspector or inspectors to be in possession of information relating to a matter considered by the inspector or inspectors to be relevant to the investigation, the inspector or inspectors may require the person—

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (a) to produce to the inspector or inspectors any relevant documents relating to that matter,
  - (b) to attend before the inspector or inspectors, and
  - (c) otherwise to give the inspector or inspectors all assistance in connection with the investigation which the person is reasonably able to give.
- (3) “Relevant documents” means documents that in the opinion of the inspector or inspectors may be relevant to whether the trade union has failed to comply with a relevant obligation.
- (4) Where a person who is not a member of the Certification Officer's staff is appointed as an inspector under this paragraph, there is incorporated in the appointment the duty of confidentiality as respects the register of the names and addresses of the trade union's members.
- (5) The duty of confidentiality as respects that register is a duty which the inspector owes to the Certification Officer—
- (a) not to disclose any name or address in the register of the names and addresses of the union's members except in permitted circumstances, and
  - (b) to take all reasonable steps to secure that there is no disclosure of any such name or address by another person except in permitted circumstances.
- (6) The circumstances in which disclosure of a member's name or address is permitted are—
- (a) where the member consents,
  - (b) where it is required or requested by the Certification Officer for the purposes of the discharge of any of the Officer's functions,
  - (c) where it is required for the purposes of the discharge of any of the functions of the inspector or any other inspector appointed by the Officer,
  - (d) where it is required for the purposes of the discharge of any of the functions of an assurer appointed under section 24ZB, or
  - (e) where it is required for the purposes of the investigation of crime or criminal proceedings.
- (7) For supplementary provision, see paragraph 6.

#### *Inspectors' reports etc*

- 4 (1) An inspector or inspectors appointed under paragraph 3—
- (a) may make interim reports to the Certification Officer,
  - (b) must make such reports if so directed by the Officer, and
  - (c) on the conclusion of the investigation, must make a final report to the Officer.
- (2) A report under sub-paragraph (1) must be in writing.
- (3) An inspector or inspectors—
- (a) may at any time inform the Certification Officer of any matters coming to their knowledge as a result of the investigation, and
  - (b) must do so if the Officer so directs.
- (4) The Certification Officer may direct an inspector or inspectors—
- (a) to take no further steps in the investigation, or
  - (b) to take only such further steps as are specified in the direction.

---

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

---

- (5) Where such a direction is made, the inspector or inspectors are not required under sub-paragraph (1)(c) to make a final report to the Certification Officer unless the Officer so directs.

*Enforcement of paragraphs 2 and 3 by Certification Officer*

- 5 (1) Where the Certification Officer is satisfied that a trade union or any other person has failed to comply with any requirement imposed under paragraph 2 or 3, the Officer may make an order requiring the trade union or person to comply with the requirement.
- (2) Before making such an order, the Certification Officer must give the trade union or person an opportunity to be heard.
- (3) In the case of a failure to comply with a requirement imposed under paragraph 2 or 3 to produce a document, the Certification Officer may make an order only if the Officer is satisfied that—
- (a) the document is in the possession of the union or person, and
  - (b) it is reasonably practicable for the union or person to comply with the requirement.
- (4) In the case of a failure to comply with any other requirement imposed under paragraph 2 or 3, the Certification Officer may make an order only if the Officer is satisfied that it is reasonably practicable for the union or person to comply with the requirement.
- (5) The order must specify—
- (a) the requirement with which the trade union or person has failed to comply, and
  - (b) the date by which the trade union or person must comply.
- (6) An order made by the Certification Officer under this paragraph may be enforced by the Officer in the same way as an order of the High Court or the Court of Session.

*Supplementary*

- 6 (1) Nothing in this Schedule requires or authorises anyone to require—
- (a) the disclosure by a person of information which the person would in an action in the High Court or the Court of Session be entitled to refuse to disclose on grounds of legal professional privilege, or
  - (b) the production by a person of a document which the person would in such an action be entitled to refuse to produce on such grounds.
- (2) But a lawyer may be required under paragraph 2 or 3 to disclose the name and address of the lawyer's client if that information may be relevant to whether a trade union has failed to comply with a requirement of section 24(1).
- (3) A person is not excused from providing an explanation or making a statement in compliance with a requirement imposed under paragraph 2(5) or 3(2) on the ground that to do so would tend to expose the person to proceedings for an offence.
- (4) But an explanation so provided or a statement so made may be used in evidence against the person by whom it is provided or made on a prosecution for an offence only where, in giving evidence, the person makes a statement inconsistent with it.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(5) In this Schedule—

- (a) references to documents include information recorded in any form;
- (b) in relation to information recorded otherwise than in legible form, references to its production are to the production of a copy of the information in legible form.]

## [<sup>F120</sup>SCHEDULE A4

Section 256D

### CERTIFICATION OFFICER: POWER TO IMPOSE FINANCIAL PENALTIES

#### Textual Amendments

**F120** Sch. A4 inserted (8.12.2021 for specified purposes, 1.4.2022 in so far as not already in force) by [Trade Union Act 2016 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 25(1), **Sch. 3** (with s. 19(2)); S.I. 2021/1373, regs. 3(b), 4(c)

#### *Introduction*

- 1 (1) In this Schedule “enforcement order” means an order made by the Certification Officer under any of the following provisions of this Act—
- (a) section 24B(6) or 25(5A) (order on failure by union to comply with duties regarding the register of members);
  - (b) section 31(2B) (order on failure by union to comply with member's request for access to accounting records);
  - (c) section 32ZC(6) (order on failure by union to provide details of industrial action etc, or political expenditure, in annual return);
  - (d) section 45C(5A) (order on failure by union to comply with duty to secure positions not held by certain offenders);
  - (e) section 55(5A) (order on failure by union to comply with requirements about elections for certain positions);
  - (f) section 72A(5) (order on failure by union to comply with restriction on applying union's funds in the furtherance of political objects);
  - (g) section 80(5A) (order on failure by union to comply with rules as to ballots on political resolutions);
  - (h) section 82(2A) (order on failure by union to comply with rules as to political fund);
  - (i) section 84A(5) (order on failure by union to provide required information to members about contributing to political fund);
  - (j) section 108B(3) (order on breach or threatened breach by union of rules on certain matters);
  - (k) paragraph 5(1) of Schedule A3 (order on failure by union or other person to comply with investigatory requirements).
- (2) In this Schedule “the person in default” means the trade union against which, or other person against whom, an enforcement order is or could be made.
- (3) A reference in this Schedule to taking steps includes a reference to abstaining from acts.

---

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

---

### *Power to impose financial penalties*

- 2 (1) Where the Certification Officer—
- (a) makes an enforcement order, or
  - (b) has power to make an enforcement order but does not do so,
- the Officer may make a penalty order or a conditional penalty order against the person in default.
- (2) A “penalty order” is an order requiring the person in default to pay a penalty of a specified amount to the Certification Officer by a specified date.
- (3) A “conditional penalty order” is an order requiring the person in default to pay a penalty of a specified amount to the Certification Officer by a specified date unless the person takes specified steps by a specified date or within a specified period.
- (4) Where the Certification Office makes both an enforcement order and a conditional penalty order, the steps specified in the conditional penalty order may, but need not, be the same as those that the enforcement order requires the person in default to take.
- (5) In this paragraph “specified” means specified in the penalty order or conditional penalty order.

### *Enforcement of conditional penalty order*

- 3 (1) This paragraph applies where the Certification Officer has made a conditional penalty order.
- (2) If the Certification Officer is satisfied that the steps specified in the order have been taken by the date or within the period specified, the Officer must notify the person in default that the penalty is not payable.
- (3) If the Certification Officer is not so satisfied, and the penalty has not been paid by the required date, the Officer must make a further order requiring payment of—
- (a) the amount originally ordered, or
  - (b) where sub-paragraph (4) applies, a lesser amount specified in the further order.
- (4) This sub-paragraph applies where it appears to the Certification Officer that—
- (a) steps specified in the conditional penalty order have to some extent been taken, or have been taken (to any extent) but not by the date or within the period specified, and
  - (b) it would be just to reduce the amount of the penalty for that reason.
- (5) An order under this paragraph may require payment immediately or by a specified date.

### *Representations*

- 4 Before making a penalty order or a conditional penalty order, or an order under paragraph 3, the Certification Officer—
- (a) must inform the person in default of the grounds on which the Officer proposes to make the order,
  - (b) must give that person an opportunity to make written representations, and
  - (c) may give that person an opportunity to make oral representations.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

### *Appeals*

- 5 A person in default may appeal to the Employment Appeal Tribunal against a decision of the Certification Officer under this Schedule on the ground that—
- (a) it was based on an error of fact,
  - (b) it was wrong in law, or
  - (c) it was unreasonable,
- or on such other grounds as may be prescribed.

### *Amount of penalty*

- 6 (1) The amount specified in a penalty order or a conditional penalty order—
- (a) may not be less than the minimum amount set by regulations, and
  - (b) may not be more than the maximum amount set by regulations.
- (2) Different amounts may be set by regulations—
- (a) in relation to different enforcement orders,
  - (b) by reference to whether the person in default is an individual or an organisation, and
  - (c) in the case of an organisation, by reference to the number of members that it has.
- (3) But—
- (a) no minimum amount set by regulations may be less than £200, and
  - (b) no maximum amount set by regulations may be more than £20,000.
- (4) Regulations may amend sub-paragraph (3)(a) or (b) by substituting a different amount.

### *Early or late payment, and enforcement*

- 7 (1) In relation to orders under this Schedule requiring payment of penalties, regulations may make provision for—
- (a) early payment discounts;
  - (b) the payment of interest or other financial penalties for late payment;
  - (c) enforcement.
- (2) Provision made by virtue of sub-paragraph (1)(b) must secure that the interest or other financial penalties for late payment do not in total exceed the amount of the penalty itself.
- (3) Provision made by virtue of sub-paragraph (1)(c) may include—
- (a) provision for the Certification Officer to recover the penalty, and any interest or other financial penalty for late payment, as a debt;
  - (b) provision for the penalty, and any interest or other financial penalty for late payment, to be recoverable, on the order of a court, as if payable under a court order.

### *Regulations*

- 8 (1) Regulations may make provision that is incidental or supplementary to that made by this Schedule.

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (2) Regulations under this Schedule may include transitional or consequential provision.
- (3) Regulations under this Schedule shall be made by the Secretary of State by statutory instrument.
- (4) No regulations under paragraph 6 or 7 or this paragraph shall be made unless a draft of them has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.

*Payment of penalties etc into Consolidated Fund*

- 9 The Certification Officer shall pay into the Consolidated Fund amounts received—
- (a) under penalty orders and conditional penalty orders (including orders under paragraph 3), and
- (b) by way of interest and other financial penalties for late payment in relation to such orders.]

SCHEDULE 1

Section 300(1).

REPEALS

**Extent Information**

**E1** See s.301(2)(e)

Chapter	Short title	Extent of repeal
38 & 39 Vict. c. 86.	Conspiracy and Protection of Property Act 1875.	Sections 3, 5, 7, 15 and 16.
59 & 60 Vict. c. 25.	Friendly Societies Act 1896.	Section 22(2) and (3).
2 & 3 Geo.5 c. 30.	Trade Union Act 1913.	The whole Act.
9 & 10 Geo.5 c. 69.	Industrial Courts Act 1919.	The whole Act.
9 & 10 Geo.6 c. 52.	Trade Disputes and Trade Unions Act 1946.	The whole Act.
11 & 12 Geo.6 c. 39.	Industrial Assurance and Friendly Societies Act 1948.	In section 6—(a) in subsection (1), the words "or a trade union or employers' association"; (b) in subsection (2), the words from "and by virtue of section 2" to "trade unions".Section 16(4).Section 23(1)(d).
1964 c. 24.	Trade Union (Amalgamations, &c.) Act 1964.	The whole Act.

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

1970 c. 36.	Merchant Shipping Act 1970.	Section 42(1).In Schedule 3, paragraph 1.
1972 c. 59.	Administration of Justice (Scotland) Act 1972.	Section 3(3).
1974 c. 46.	Friendly Societies Act 1974.	In Schedule 9, paragraphs 1 and 12.
1974 c. 52.	Trade Union and Labour Relations Act 1974.	The whole Act.
1975 c. 71.	Employment Protection Act 1975.	Sections 1 to 10. Sections 17 to 21. Sections 99 to 108. Section 110. Sections 117 to 119. Sections 121 to 123. Section 124(1) (b). In section 125(1), the words from the beginning to "this Act and".Sections 126 to 128. In section 129 —(a) in subsection (5), the words from the beginning to "section 123(3) above,";
1975 c. 71.—(cont.)	Employment Protection Act 1975.—(cont.)	(b) in subsection (6), the words "Sections 127 and 128 above and".Schedule 1. Schedule 12.In Schedule 16 —(a) Part III;(b) in Part IV, paragraphs 2, 3, 7, 10, 13 and 16.In Schedule 17, paragraphs 1 to 6
1976 c. 7.	Trade Union and Labour Relations (Amendment) Act 1976.	The whole Act.
1976 c. 74.	Race Relations Act 1976.	Schedule 3.
1977 c. 45.	Criminal Law Act 1977.	Section 1(3).Section 5(11).In section 63(2), the references to sections 5 and 7 of the Conspiracy and Protection of Property Act 1875.
1977 c. 49.	National Health Service Act 1977.	In Schedule 15, paragraph 62.
1978 c. 29.	National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978.	In Schedule 16, paragraph 39.
1978 c. 36.	House of Commons (Administration) Act 1978.	In Schedule 2—(a) in paragraph 1, the words "and section 122 of the Employment Protection Act 1975";(b) paragraph 5.



**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

1978 c. 44.	Employment Protection (Consolidation) Act 1978.	Sections 23 to 28. Section 30(3). Section 58. In section 59, the words from "either" to "or" at the end of paragraph (a). Sections 62 and 62A. In section 64—(a) in subsection (1), the words "Subject to subsection (3),"; (b) subsection (3). In section 64A(2), the words from "or if it is shown" to the end. Section 67(3). Section 72A. Section 73(4A) and (4B). Section 75A. Sections 76A to 79. In section 132(1) (b), the words from "or in pursuance of an award" to the end. In section 133(1)—
1978 c. 44.—(cont.)	Employment Protection (Consolidation) Act 1978.—(cont.)	(a) in paragraph (a), the words "23, 27, 28,"; (b) in paragraph (b), the words from "of section 99 or " to "1975 or"; (c) paragraphs (d), (f) and (g). In section 136—(a) in subsection (1), paragraphs (c) and (g); (b) subsections (2) and (3); (c) in subsection (5), the words from "or under section 2" to the end. In section 146(4), the words "27, 28". In section 149(2), the words "58, 58A", "73(4B)," and "75A(7)". In Schedule 2—(a) In paragraph 2(2), the words "or 58"; (b) In paragraphs 2(4) and 6(3), the words "58(3) to (12), 58A,". In Schedule 16, paragraphs 2, 5, 18 and 23.
1978 c. 46.	Employment (Continental Shelf) Act 1978.	Section 1(1).
1980 c. 9.	Reserve Forces Act 1980.	In Schedule 9, paragraph 15.
1980 c. 42.	Employment Act 1980.	Sections 1 to 5. Sections 15 and 16. Section 19. In section 20(1), the definitions of "the 1974 Act" and "the 1975 Act". In Schedule 1—(a) paragraphs 2 to 7; (b) in paragraph 17, the words from "and after paragraph (c)" to

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

		the end;(c) paragraphs 19, 21(b) and 24.
1980 c. 53.	Health Services Act 1980.	In Schedule 1, paragraph 25.
1982 c. 9.	Agricultural Training Board Act 1982.	Section 11(3).
1982 c. 10.	Industrial Training Act 1982.	In Schedule 3, paragraph 6.
1982 c. 23.	Oil and Gas (Enterprise) Act 1982.	In Schedule 3, paragraph 25.
1982 c. 46.	Employment Act 1982.	Sections 2 to 19. Section 22(4) and (5). Schedule 1. In Schedule 2, paragraph 6(1).
1982 c. 46.	Employment Act 1982. —(cont.)	In Schedule 3, paragraphs 10 to 13, 17 to 20, 24, 27(2)(a) and (3)(a).
1984 c. 49.	Trade Union Act 1984.	The whole Act.
1985 c. 9.	Companies Consolidation (Consequential Provisions) Act 1985.	In Schedule 2, the entry relating to the Trade Union and Labour Relations Act 1974.
1986 c. 48.	Wages Act 1986.	In section 1(6), the words from “and where a certificate” to the end. Section 5(3A).
1986 c. 64.	Public Order Act 1986.	In Schedule 2, paragraph 1.
1987 c. 43.	Consumer Protection Act 1987.	In Schedule 4, paragraph 8.
1988 c. 19.	Employment Act 1988.	Sections 1 to 23. Section 30. In section 32— (a) in subsection (1), all the definitions except those of “the 1973 Act” and “modifications”; (b) subsection (2). In section 34— (a) subsections (2) and (3); (b) in subsection (6), paragraphs (a) and (b) and the words following paragraph (c). Schedule 1. In Schedule 3, paragraphs 1 to 6.
1989 c. 38.	Employment Act 1989.	Section 14. In Schedule 6, paragraph 19. In Schedule 9, paragraph 2.

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

1989 c. 40.	Companies Act 1989.	Section 124.
1990 c. 38.	Employment Act 1990.	Sections 1 to 12. In section 18(1), the paragraphs relating to sections 11 and 12. Schedule 1. In Schedule 2, paragraphs 1(2), 2 and 3.
S.I. 1992/807 (N.I. 5)	Industrial Relations (Northern Ireland) Order 1992.	Article 67(2).

SCHEDULE 2

Section 300(2).

CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

**Extent Information**

**E2** See s.301(2)(f)

*Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (c.13)*

F121<sub>1</sub> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F121** Sch. 2 para. 1 repealed (25.10.1999) by 1999 c. 26, s. 44, **Sch. 9(6)**; S.I. 1999/2830, art. 2(3), **Sch. 2, Pt. I** (with **Sch. 3 para. 4**)

*Transport Act 1968 (c.73)*

F122<sub>2</sub> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F122** Sch. 2 para. 2 repealed (1.1.1996) by 1995 c. 23, s. 60(2), **Sch. 8 Pt. I** (with ss. 54, 55); S.I. 1995/2181, **art. 2**

F123 ...

**Textual Amendments**

**F123** Sch. 2 para. 3 crossheading repealed (1.10.2010) by The Equality Act 2010 (Consequential Amendments, Saving and Supplementary Provisions) Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/2279), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2** (see S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2)

F124<sub>3</sub> .....

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

**Textual Amendments**  
**F124** Sch. 2 para. 3(1)-(3) repealed (1.10.2010) by The Equality Act 2010 (Consequential Amendments, Saving and Supplementary Provisions) Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/2279), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2** (see S.I. 2010/2317, art. 2)

*House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (c.24)*

- 4 (1) The House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 is amended as follows.
- (2) Part II of Schedule 1 (bodies of which all members are disqualified under that Act) shall continue to have effect with the following entries (originally inserted by paragraph 16(2) of Part IV of Schedule 16 to the Employment Protection Act 1975)—
  - “The Central Arbitration Committee.”
  - “The Council of the Advisory, Conciliation and Arbitration Service.”
  - “The Employment Appeal Tribunal.”
- (3) In Part III of Schedule 1 (other disqualifying offices), for the entry inserted by paragraph 16(3) of Part IV of Schedule 16 to the Employment Protection Act 1975 substitute—
  - “Certification Officer or any assistant certification officer.”
- <sup>F125</sup>(4) .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F125** Sch. 2 para. 4(4) repealed (25.10.1999) by 1999 c. 26, s. 44, **Sch. 9(6)**; S.I. 1999/2830, art. 2(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. I** (with Sch. 3 para. 4)

*Social Security Pensions Act 1975 (c.60)*

<sup>F126</sup>5 .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F126** Sch. 2 para. 5 repealed (7.2.1994) by 1993 c. 48, s. 188, **Sch. 5 Pt.I** (with s. 43(3)); S.I. 1994/86, **art. 2**

*Sex Discrimination Act 1975 (c.65)*

- 6 In Part VIII of the Sex Discrimination Act 1975 (supplementary provisions), after section 85 (application to Crown) insert—
  - “85A Application to House of Commons staff.**
  - (1) Parts II and IV apply to an act done by an employer of a relevant member of the House of Commons staff, and to service as such a member, as they apply to an act done by and to service for the purposes of a Minister of the Crown or government department, and accordingly apply as if references to

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

a contract of employment included references to the terms of service of such a member.

- (2) In this section “relevant member of the House of Commons staff” has the same meaning as in section 139 of the Employment Protection (Consolidation) Act 1978; and subsections (4) to (9) of that section (person to be treated as employer of House of Commons staff) apply, with any necessary modifications, for the purposes of Parts II and IV as they apply by virtue of this section.”.

*Race Relations Discrimination Act 1976 (c.74)*

- 7 In Part X of the Race Relations Act 1976 (supplementary provisions), after section 75 (application to Crown) insert—

**“75A Application to House of Commons staff.**

- (1) Parts II and IV apply to an act done by an employer of a relevant member of the House of Commons staff, and to service as such a member, as they apply to an act done by and to service for the purposes of a Minister of the Crown or government department, and accordingly apply as if references to a contract of employment included references to the terms of service of such a member.
- (2) In this section “relevant member of the House of Commons staff” has the same meaning as in section 139 of the Employment Protection (Consolidation) Act 1978; and subsections (4) to (9) of that section (person to be treated as employer of House of Commons staff) apply, with any necessary modifications, for the purposes of Parts II and IV as they apply by virtue of this section.”.

*Aircraft and Shipbuilding Industries Act 1977 (c.3)*

F1278 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F127** Sch. 2 para. 8 omitted (22.3.2013) by virtue of [The Public Bodies \(Abolition of British Shipbuilders\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/687\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 13](#)

*Patents Act 1977 (c.37)*

- 9 In section 40 of the Patents Act 1977 (compensation for employees for certain inventions), in subsection (6) in the definition of “relevant collective agreement” for “the Trade Union and Labour Relations Act 1974” substitute “ the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 ”.

*House of Commons (Administration) Act 1978 (c.36)*

- 10 In Schedule 1 to the House of Commons (Administration) Act 1978 (the House of Commons Commission), in paragraph 5 (delegation of functions) for sub-paragraph (6) substitute—

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

“(6) In sub-paragraph (5) “trade union”, and “recognised” in relation to a trade union, have the same meaning as in the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992.”.

*Employment Protection (Consolidation) Act 1978 (c.44)*

F128<sup>11</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F128 Sch. 2 para. 11 repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 18, ss. 242, 243, Sch. 3 Pt. I (with ss. 191-195, 202)

F129<sup>12</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F129 Sch. 2 para. 12 repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 18, ss. 240, 243, Sch. 3 Pt. I (with ss. 191-195, 202)

F130<sup>13</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F130 Sch. 2 para. 13 repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 18, ss. 240, 243, Sch. 3 Pt. I (with ss. 191-195, 202)

F131<sup>14</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F131 Sch. 2 para. 14 repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 18, ss. 240, 243, Sch. 3 Pt. I (with ss. 191-195, 202)

F132<sup>15</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F132 Sch. 2 para. 15 repealed (30.8.1993) by 1993 c. 19, s. 51, Sch.10; S.I. 1993/1908, art. 2(1), Sch.1

F133<sup>16</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F133 Sch. 2 para. 16 repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 18, ss. 240, 243, Sch. 3 Pt. I (with ss. 191-195, 202)

F134<sup>17</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F134 Sch. 2 para. 17 repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 18, ss. 240, 243, Sch. 3 Pt. I (with ss. 191-195, 202)

F135<sup>18</sup> .....

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

**Textual Amendments**

**F135** Sch. 2 para. 18 repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 18, ss. 240, 243, **Sch. 3 Pt. I** (with ss. 191-195, 202)

<sup>F136</sup>19 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F136** Sch. 2 para. 19 repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 17, ss. 45, 46, **Sch. 3 Pt. I** (with s. 38)

<sup>F137</sup>20 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F137** Sch. 2 para. 20 repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 17, ss. 45, 46, **Sch. 3 Pt. I** (with s. 38)

<sup>F138</sup>21 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F138** Sch. 2 para. 21 repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 18, ss. 240, 243, **Sch. 3 Pt. I** (with ss. 191-195, 202)

<sup>F139</sup>22 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F139** Sch. 2 para. 22 repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 18, ss. 240, 243, **Sch. 3 Pt. I** (with ss. 191-195, 202)

<sup>F140</sup>23 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F140** Sch. 2 para. 23 repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 18, ss. 240, 243, **Sch. 3 Pt. I** (with ss. 191-195, 202)

24 <sup>F141</sup>(1) .....

<sup>F141</sup>(2) .....

<sup>F142</sup>(3) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F141** Sch. 2 para. 24(1)(2) repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 17, ss. 45, 46, **Sch. 3 Pt. I** (with s. 38)

**F142** Sch. 2 para. 24(3) repealed (30.11.1993) by 1993 c. 19, s. 51, **Sch. 10**; S.I. 1993/2503, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2**

<sup>F143</sup>25 .....

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

**Textual Amendments**

**F143** Sch. 2 para. 25 repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 17, ss. 45, 46, **Sch. 3 Pt. I** (with s. 38)

*Crown Agents Act 1979 (c.43)*

**F144**26 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F144** Sch. 2 para. 26 repealed (21.3.1997) by 1995 c. 24, s. 13(2), **Sch. 2 Pt. I**; S.I. 1997/1139, **art. 2**

*Agricultural Training Board Act 1982 (c.9)*

27 **F145** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F145** Sch. 2 para. 27 repealed (22.7.2004) by Statute Law (Repeals) Act 2004 (c. 14), **s. 1(1)**, {Sch. 1 Pt. 2 Group 2}

*Industrial Training Act 1982 (c.10)*

28 In section 21 of the Industrial Training Act 1982 (short title, extent and commencement), before subsection (2) (extent) insert—

“(1A) Section 287(2) of the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 (power to extend provisions to offshore employment) applies to the provisions of this Act as to the provisions of that Act.”;

and in subsection (2) for “Paragraph 4 of Schedule 3 to this Act extends” substitute “ Subsection (1A) above and paragraph 4 of Schedule 3 extend ”.

*Oil and Gas (Enterprise) Act 1982 (c.23)*

**F146**29 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F146** Sch. 2 para. 29 repealed (15.2.1999) by 1998 c. 17, s. 51, **Sch. 5 Pt. I** (with Sch. 3 para. 5(1)); S.I. 1999/161, **art. 2(1)**

*Employment Act 1982 (c.46)*

**F147**30 .....



**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

**Textual Amendments**

**F147** Sch. 2 para. 30 repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 18, ss. 240, 243, **Sch. 3 Pt. I** (with ss. 191-195, 202)

*Insurance Companies Act 1982 (c.50)*

31 In section 2(2) of the Insurance Companies Act 1982 (exceptions from requirement of authorisation under that Act), and in section 15(3) of that Act (exceptions from regulatory provisions), for “assigned to them by section 28 of the Trade Union and Labour Relations Act 1974” substitute “ respectively assigned by section 1 and section 122(1) of the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 ”.

*Value Added Tax Act 1983 (c.55)*

<sup>F148</sup>32 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F148** Sch. 2 para. 32 repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 23, ss. 100(2), 101(1), **Sch. 15**

*Insolvency Act 1986 (c.45)*

<sup>F149</sup>33 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F149** Sch. 2 para. 33 repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 18, ss. 240, 243, **Sch. 3 Pt. I** (with ss. 191-195, 202)

*Wages Act 1986 (c.48)*

34 <sup>F150</sup>(1) .....

<sup>F150</sup>(2) .....

<sup>F151</sup>(3) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F150** Sch. 2 para. 34(1)(2) repealed (22.8.1996) by 1996 c. 18, ss. 240, 243, **Sch. 3 Pt. I** (with ss. 191-195, 202)

**F151** Sch. 2 para. 34(3) repealed (30.8.1993) by 1993 c. 19, s. 51, **Sch. 10**; S.I. 1993/1908, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Building Societies Act 1986 (c.53)*

35 In section 7(4)(c)(iii) of the Building Societies Act 1986 (shares held and deposits made by or on behalf of trade union) for “Trade Union and Labour Relations Act 1974” substitute “ Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 ”.

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

*Sex Discrimination Act 1986 (c.59)*

- 36 In section 6 of the Sex Discrimination Act 1986 (application of provisions to collective agreements), in subsection (6) (meaning of “collective agreement”) for the words from “section 29(1)” to “trade dispute)” substitute “ section 178(2) of the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 ”.

*Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c.1)*

F15237 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F152** Sch. 2 para. 37 repealed (with effect in accordance with s. 1184(1) of the amending Act) by [Corporation Tax Act 2010 \(c. 4\)](#), s. 1184(1), [Sch. 3 Pt. 1](#) (with [Sch. 2](#))

*Local Government Act 1988 (c.9)*

- 38 In section 17 of the Local Government Act 1988 (local and other public authority contracts: exclusion of non-commercial considerations), in subsection (8)—
- (a) in the definition of “industrial dispute”, for “the Trade Union and Labour Relations Act 1974” substitute “ Part V of the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 ”, and
  - (b) in the closing words, for “Trade Union and Labour Relations Act 1974” substitute “ Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 ”.

*Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (c.42)*

- 39 (1) In section 12 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (conflict of interest in staff negotiations), subsection (2) (definitions) is amended as follows.
- (2) For the definition of “member” substitute—
- ““member”, in relation to a trade union consisting wholly or partly of, or of representatives of, constituent or affiliated organisations, includes a member of any of its constituent or affiliated trade unions;”.
- (3) In the definition of “official” and “trade union” for “the Trade Union and Labour Relations Act 1974” substitute “ the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 ”.

*Industrial Relations (Northern Ireland) Order 1992 (S.I. 1992 No. 807 (N.I. 5))*

- 40 (1) The Industrial Relations (Northern Ireland) Order 1992 is amended as follows.
- (2) In Article 5 (lists of trade unions and employers’ associations)—
- (a) in paragraph (5)(a) for “either list maintained under section 8 of the Trade Union and Labour Relations Act 1974” substitute “ the list of trade unions or the list of employers’ associations kept under the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 ”;
  - (b) in paragraph (11) for “or employers’ associations maintained under section 8 of the Trade Union and Labour Relations Act 1974” substitute “ or the list of employers’ associations kept under the Trade Union and Labour

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 ” and for “subsection (10) of that section” substitute “ section 2(5) or 123(5) of that Act ”.

(3) In Article 6 (certification as independent trade union), in paragraphs (12) and (13) for “section 8 of the Employment Protection Act 1975” substitute “ section 6 of the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 ”.

(4) In Article 12 (returns by trade unions and employers’ associations outside Northern Ireland), in paragraph (1) for “section 11 of the Trade Union and Labour Relations Act 1974” substitute “ section 32 of the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 ” and for “subsection (2)” substitute “ subsection (1) ”.

F153 (5) .....

F153 (6) .....

F153 (7) .....

F153 (8) .....

F153 (9) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F153** Sch. 2 para. 40(5)-(9) repealed (1.10.1995) by [S.I. 1995/1980 \(N.I. 12\)](#), [art. 150\(4\)](#), [Sch. 4](#); [S.R. 1995/354](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

SCHEDULE 3

Section 300(3).

TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS AND SAVINGS

**Extent Information**

**E3** See s.301(2)(f)

*Continuity of the law*

- 1 (1) The repeal and re-enactment of provisions in this Act does not affect the continuity of the law.
- (2) Anything done (including subordinate legislation made), or having effect as done, under a provision reproduced in this Act has effect as if done under the corresponding provision of this Act.
- (3) References (express or implied) in this Act or any other enactment, instrument or document to a provision of this Act shall, so far as the context permits, be construed as including, in relation to times, circumstances and purposes before the commencement of this Act, a reference to corresponding earlier provisions.
- (4) A reference (express or implied) in any enactment, instrument or other document to a provision reproduced in this Act shall be construed, so far as is required for continuing its effect, and subject to any express amendment made by this Act,

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

as being, or as the case may required including, a reference to the corresponding provision of this Act.

*General saving for old transitional provisions and savings*

- 2 (1) The repeal by this Act of a transitional provision or saving relating to the coming into force of a provision reproduced in this Act does not affect the operation of the transitional provision or saving, in so far as it is not specifically reproduced in this Act but remains capable of having effect in relation to the corresponding provision of this Act.
- (2) The repeal by this Act of an enactment previously repealed subject to savings does not affect the continued operation of those savings.
- (3) The repeal by this Act of a saving on the previous repeal of an enactment does not affect the operation of the saving in so far as it is not specifically reproduced in this Act but remains capable of having effect.

*Effect of repeal of 1946 Act*

- 3 The repeal by this Act of the <sup>M2</sup>Trade Disputes and Trade Unions Act 1946 shall not be construed as reviving in any respect the effect of the <sup>M3</sup>Trade Disputes and Trade Unions Act 1927.

**Marginal Citations**

**M2** 1946 c. 52.

**M3** 1927 c. 22.

*Pre-1974 references to registered trade unions or employers' associations*

- 4 (1) Any reference in an enactment passed, or instrument made under an enactment, before 16th September 1974—
- (a) to a trade union or employers' association registered under—
- (i) the Trade Union Acts 1871 to 1964, or
- (ii) the <sup>M4</sup>Industrial Relations Act 1971, or
- (b) to an organisation of workers or an organisation of employers within the meaning of the Industrial Relations Act 1971,
- shall be construed as a reference to a trade union or employers' association within the meaning of this Act.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply to any enactment relating to income tax or corporation tax.

**Marginal Citations**

**M4** 1971 c. 72.

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

### *Enforceability of collective agreements*

- 5 Section 179 of this Act (enforceability of collective agreements) does not apply to a collective agreement made on or after 1st December 1971 and before 16th September 1974.

### *Trade unions and employers' associations ceasing to be incorporated by virtue of 1974 Act*

- 6 (1) The repeal by this Act of section 19 of the <sup>M5</sup>Trade Union and Labour Relations Act 1974 (transitional provisions for trade unions and employers' associations ceasing to be incorporated) does not affect—
- (a) the title to property which by virtue of that section vested on 16th September 1974 in "the appropriate trustees" as defined by that section, or
  - (b) any liability, obligation or right affecting such property which by virtue of that section became a liability, obligation or right of those trustees.
- (2) A certificate given by the persons who on that date were the president and general secretary of a trade union or employers' association, or occupied positions equivalent to that of president and general secretary, that the persons named in the certificate are the appropriate trustees of the union or association for the purposes of section 19(2) of the Trade Union and Labour Relations Act 1974 is conclusive evidence that those persons were the appropriate trustees for those purposes.
- (3) A document which purports to be such a certificate shall be taken to be such a certificate unless the contrary is proved.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M5** 1974 c. 52.

### *References to former Industrial Arbitration Board*

- 7 Any reference to the former Industrial Arbitration Board in relation to which section 10(2) of the <sup>M6</sup>Employment Protection Act 1975 applied immediately before the commencement of this Act shall continue to be construed as a reference to the Central Arbitration Committee.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M6** 1975 c. 71.

### *Effect of political resolution passed before 1984 amendments*

- 8 A resolution under section 3 of the <sup>M7</sup>Trade Union Act 1913, or rule made for the purposes of that section, in relation to which section 17(2) of the <sup>M8</sup>Trade Union Act 1984 applied immediately before the commencement of this Act shall continue to have effect as if for any reference to the political objects to which section 3 of the 1913 Act formerly applied there were substituted a reference to the objects to which that section applied as amended by the 1984 Act.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

#### Marginal Citations

- M7** 1913 c. 30.  
**M8** 1984 c. 49.

#### *Persons elected to trade union office before 1988 amendments*

- 9 (1) In relation to a person who was, within the period of five years ending with 25th July 1989, elected to a position to which the requirements of section 1 of the Trade Union Act 1984 were extended by virtue of section 12(1) of the Employment Act 1988—
- (a) the references in section 46(1)(a) and 58(2)(a) to satisfying the requirements of Chapter IV of Part I shall be disregarded, and
  - (b) the period of five years mentioned in section 46(1)(b) shall be calculated from the date of that election.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply if the only persons entitled to vote in the election were themselves persons holding positions to which Chapter IV of Part I would have applied had that Chapter been in force at the time.
- 10 In relation to a person who was elected to a position to which Chapter IV of Part I applies before 26th July 1989, the reference in section 58(2)(a) (exemption of persons nearing retirement) to satisfying the requirements of that Chapter—
- (a) shall not be construed as requiring compliance with any provision corresponding to a provision of section 13 or 15 of the <sup>M9</sup>Employment Act 1988 (additional requirements as to elections) which was not then in force, and
  - (b) in relation to an election before the commencement of section 14(2) of that Act (postal ballots) shall be construed as requiring compliance with section 3 of the Trade Union Act 1984 (non-postal ballots).

#### Marginal Citations

- M9** 1988 c. 19.

#### *Qualification to act as auditor of trade union or employers' association*

- 11 (1) Nothing in section 34 (eligibility for appointment as auditor) affects the validity of any appointment as auditor of a trade union or employers' association made before 1st October 1991 (when section 389 of the <sup>M10</sup>Companies Act 1985 was repealed and replaced by the provisions of Part II of the <sup>M11</sup>Companies Act 1989).
- (2) A person who is not qualified as mentioned in section 34(1) may act as auditor of a trade union in respect of an accounting period if—
- (a) the union was registered under the Trade Union Acts 1871 to 1964 on 30th September 1971,
  - (b) he acted as its auditor in respect of the last period in relation to which it was required to make an annual return under section 16 of the <sup>M12</sup>Trade Union Act 1871,
  - (c) he has acted as its auditor in respect of every accounting period since that period, and

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (d) he retains an authorisation formerly granted by the Board of Trade or the Secretary of State under section 16(1)(b) of the <sup>M13</sup>Companies Act 1948 (adequate knowledge and experience, or pre-1947 practice).

**Marginal Citations**

- M10** 1985 c. 6.  
**M11** 1989 c. 40.  
**M12** 1871 c. 31.  
**M13** 1948 c. 38.

*Industrial Relations (Northern Ireland) Order 1992 (S.I. 1992/807 (N.I. 5))*

<sup>F154</sup>12 .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F154** Sch. 3 para. 12 repealed (1.10.1995) by [S.I. 1995/1980 \(N.I. 12\)](#), art. 150(4), [Sch. 4](#); [S.R. 1995/354](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#)

*Use of existing forms, &c.*

- 13 Any document made, served or issued on or after the commencement of this Act which contains a reference to an enactment repealed by this Act shall be construed, except so far as a contrary intention appears, as referring or, as the context may require, including a reference to the corresponding provision of this Act.

*Saving for power to vary or revoke*

- 14 The power of the Secretary of State by further order to vary or revoke the <sup>M14</sup>Funds for Trade Union Ballots Order 1982 extends to so much of section 115(2)(a) as reproduces the effect of Article 2 of that order.

**Marginal Citations**

- M14** [S.I. 1982/953](#).

TABLE OF DERIVATIONS

THE FOLLOWING ABBREVIATIONS ARE USED IN THIS TABLE:—

1875	Conspiracy and Protection of Property Act 1875 (c. 86).
1913	Trade Union Act 1913 (2 & 3 Geo.5 c. 30).

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

1919	Industrial Courts Act 1919 (c. 69).
1964	Trade Union (Amalgamations, &c.) Act 1964 (c. 24).
1971	Industrial Relations Act 1971 (c. 72).
1974	Trade Union and Labour Relations Act 1974 (c. 52).
1975	Employment Protection Act 1975 (c. 71).
1976	Trade Union and Labour Relations (Amendment) Act 1976 (c. 7).
1978	Employment Protection (Consolidation) Act 1978 (c. 44).
1980	Employment Act 1980 (c. 42).
1982	Employment Act 1982 (c. 46).
1984	Trade Union Act 1984 (c. 49).
1988	Employment Act 1988 (c. 19).
1989	Employment Act 1989 (c. 38).
1990	Employment Act 1990 (c. 38).

<i>Provision</i>	<i>Derivation</i>
Part I, Chapter I.	
1	1913 s.2(1); 1964 s.9(1) “trade union”; 1974 s.28(1), Sch.3 paras.2(2), 10(8); 1975 s.126(1) “trade union”; 1978 s.153(1); 1980 s.3(9); 1982 s.18(2); 1984 ss.9(1), 10(5); 1988 ss.18(2), 32(1); 1990 ss.7(5), 8(7).
2(1)	1974 s.8(1), (2); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, para.1.
(2), (3)	1974 s.8(9); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, paras.1 and 4.
(4), (5), (6)	1974 s.8(10); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, paras.1 and 5.
3(1)	1974 s.8(3); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III para.1.
(2)	1974 s.8(4); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III para.1.
(3)	1974 s.8(3); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III para.1.
(4)	1974 s.8(5); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III para.1.
4(1), (2)	1974 s.8(6); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, para.1.
(3)	1974 s.8(6A); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, paras.1 and 2.
5	1974 s.30(1) “independent trade union”; 1975 s.126(1) “independent trade union”,



**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

	“independence” and “independent”; 1978 s.153(1) “independent trade union”.
6(1)	1975 s.8(1), (2).
(2), (3)	1975 s.8(3), (4).
(4)	1975 s.8(6).
(5)	1975 s.8(5)(a),(b).
(6)	1975 s.8(5)(c).
7(1)	1975 s.8(7).
(2)	1975 s.8(3), (8).
(3)	1975 s.8(6), (8).
(4)	1975 s.8(5)(a),(b), (8).
(5)	1975 s.8(5)(c), (8).
(6)	1975 s.8(10).
8(1) to (3)	1975 s.8(11).
(4), (5)	1975 s.8(12).
9(1)	1974 s.8(7); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, para.3; 1978 s.136(3), Sch.16 para.18.
(2)	1975 s.8(9).
(3)	1974 s.8(7); 1975 s.8(9), Sch.16 Pt.III para.3.
(4)	1974 s.8(7); 1975 s.8(9), Sch.16 Pt.III para.3; 1978 s.136(3), Sch.16 paras.18 and 23(3).
Part I, Chapter II.	
10(1), (2)	1974 s.2(1)(a), (c), (d).
(3)	1974 s.2(2), (3); Interpretation Act 1978 (c.30) s.17(2)(a); Companies Consolidation (Consequential Provisions) Act 1985 (c.9) Sch.2.
11(1), (2)	1974 s.2(5).
12(1)	1974 s.2(1)(b).
(2)	1974 s.2(1)(e).
(3)	drafting.
13(1)	1974 s.4(1), (2), (3).
(2)	1974 s.4(1).
(3)	1974 s.4(3).
(4)	1974 s.4(1).
14(1) to (6)	1974 s.4(3) to (8)
15(1) to (4)	1988 s.8(1) to (4).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(5)	1988 s.8(4), (5).
(6)	1988 s.8(6).
(7)	1988 s.32(1) “member”.
16(1) to (4)	1988 s.9(1) to (4).
(5)	1988 s.23(1), (2).
(6)	1988 s.9(5).
(7)	1988 s.32(1) “member”.
17(1)	1974 Sch.1 para.31(1)(a).
(2), (3)	1974 Sch.1 para.31(2).
(4), (5)	1974 Sch.1 para.31(3).
(6)	1974 s.26(2), (3).
18(1)	1974 Sch.1 para.31(1)(b); Administration of Estates (Small Payments) (Increase of Limits) Order 1984 (S.I. 1984/539).
(2)	1974 Sch.1 para.31(3).
(3)	1974 s.26(2), (3).
(4)	1974 Sch.1 para.31(4); 1975 Sch.16, Pt.III, para.32.
19(1)	Industrial Assurance and Friendly Societies Act 1948 (c.39) ss.6(1), (2), 23(1)(d); 1974 Sch.3 para.5(2), (4).
(2)	Industrial Assurance and Friendly Societies Act 1948 (c.39) s.16(4); Friendly Societies Act 1974 (c.46) Sch.9 para.12; 1974 Sch.3 para.5(3).
(3)	Friendly Societies Act 1896 (c.25) s.22(2), (3); Friendly Societies Act 1974 (c.46) Sch.9 para.1; 1974 s.9(1).
20(1)	1974 s.13(1); 1982 s.15(2); 1990 s.6(2).
(2) to (4)	1982 s.15(3) to (3B); 1990 s.6(3).
(5)	1982 s.15(8).
(6)	1982 s.15(9); 1990 s.6(8).
(7)	1982 s.15(7) “rules”.
21(1)	1982 s.15(4); 1990 s.6(4).
(2)	1982 s.15(5); 1990 s.6(5).
(3)	1982 s.15(5A); 1990 s.6(5).
(4)	1982 s.15(5B); 1990 s.6(5).
(5)	1982 s.15(6).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(6)	1982 s.15(6A); 1990 s.6(6).
(7)	1982 s.15(7) “commercial contract”; 1990 s.6(7).
22(1)	1982 s.16(1), (2); Consumer Protection Act 1987 (c.43) Sch.4 para.8.
(2)	1982 s.16(1), (3).
(3)	1985 s.16(4), (5)(b).
(4)	1982 s.16(5)(a).
(5)	1982 s.16(2)(b), (6).
23(1)	1982 s.17(1).
(2)	1982 s.17(2), (3) “political fund”, “provident benefits fund”.
(3)	1982 s.17(3) “provident benefits”.
Part I, Chapter III.	
24(1), (2)	1984 s.4(1), (2).
(3), (4)	1984 s.4(2A); 1988 Sch.3 para. 5(3).
(5)	1984 s.9(1) “proper address”.
(6)	1984 ss.5(10), 6(3).
25(1)	1984 s.5(1).
(2)	1984 s.5(3); s.6(5).
(3)	1984 s.5(4).
(4), (5)	1984 s.6(1), (2).
(6), (7)	1984 s.6(7), (8).
26(1)	1984 s.5(1).
(2)	1984 s.6(4).
(3)	1984 s.5(4).
(4)	1984 s.5(5), (6), (7), (9).
(5)	1984 s.5(11), (12).
(6)	1988 s.23(1), (2).
27	1974 s.11(4).
28(1)	1974 s.10(1), (2).
(2)	1974 s.10(3).
29(1)	1988 s.6(1), (9)(a).
(2)	1988 s.6(9)(a); drafting.
(3)	1988 s.6(2).
30(1)	1988 s.6(2), (10).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(2), (3)	1988 s.6(3), (4).
(4)	1974 Sch.2 para.6; Companies Consolidation (Consequential Provisions) Act 1985 (c.9), Sch.2; 1988 s.6(9)(c).
(5), (6)	1988 s.6(5), (6).
(7)	1988 s.32(1) "member".
31(1), (2)	1988 s.6(7).
(3)	1988 s.23(1), (2).
32(1)	1974 s.11(1), (2); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III para.1.
(2)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.1(1), (2).
(3)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I paras. 2, 3 and 4.
(4)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.5.
(5), (6)	1974 s.11(4), (5).
33(1)	1974 s.11(3).
(2)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.22.
34(1)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I paras.6, 7; Interpretation Act 1978 (c.30) s.17(2)(a); Companies Consolidation (Consequential Provisions) Act 1985 (c.9) Sch.2.
(2), (3)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.9(1), (2).
(4)	1974 s.26(2), (3); 1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.9(3).
(5)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.10(1), (2).
35(1)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.11, 12, 13(1).
(2)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.12.
(3) to (5)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.13(1) to (3).
(6)	1974 s.26(2), (3); 1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.14.
(7), (8)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.15(1), (2).
36(1)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.18.
(2)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.19.
(3), (4)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.20.
37(1)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.16.
(2)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.21.
(3)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.I para.17.
38(1)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.II para.36(a).
(2)	1974 Sc.2 Pt.II paras.34, 35, 36(c).
39(1)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.II, para.27; 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, para.1.

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(2)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.II, paras.25, 27.
(3)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.II, para.28.
40(1), (2)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.II, para.32(1), (2).
(3)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.II, paras.24, 33.
(4)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.II, paras 25, 33.
(5), (6)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.II, paras.26, 33; 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, para.1.
(7)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.II, paras.28, 33.
41(1)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.II, paras.30, 33A; 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, para.1; 1980 Sch.1 para.3.
(2)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.II, paras.31, 33B; 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, para.1; 1980 Sch.1 para.3.
(3)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.II, para.33B; 1980 Sch.1 para.3.
(4)	1974 Sch.2 Pt.II, para.32(3); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, para.1.
42	1974 Sch.2 Pt.II, para.36(b); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, para.1.
43(1)	1974 s.11(1).
(2)	1984 s.7(4) to (7).
44(1)	drafting.
(2)	1974 ss.10(4), 11(8).
(3)	1974 s.10(4), 11(8); 1984 s.4(3).
45(1) to (4)	1974 s.12(1) to (4); 1988 s.6(8).
(5)	1974 s.12(5); Criminal Justice Act 1982 (c.48) ss.38, 46; 1988 s.6(8).
Part I, Chapter IV.	
46(1), (2)	1984 s.1(1), (2), (6B); 1988 s.12(1), Sch.3 Pt.I para.5(1).
(3)	1984 s.1(6A); 1988 s.12(1).
(4)	1984 s.1(6C); 1988 s.12(1).
(5)	1984 s.1(7).
(6)	1984 s.1(1), (4).
47(1), (2)	1984 s.2(9), (10).
(3)	1984 s.2(11), (12).
48(1)	1988 s.13(2)(a), (b).
(2)	1988 s.13(2)(b), (4).
(3)	1988 s.13(3).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(4) to (6)	1988 s.13(2)(d) to (f).
(7)	1988 s.13(2)(c).
(8)	1988 s.13(5).
49(1)	1988 s.15(2)(a).
(2), (3)	1988 s.15(3), (4).
(4)	1988 s.15(2)(b).
(5)	1988 s.15(2)(bb); 1990 s.5(5).
(6), (7)	1988 s.15(2)(c), (d).
50(1), (2)	1984 s.2(1), (2).
(3)	1984 ss.2(3), (4)(a), 9(1) "section".
(4)	1984 s.2(4)(b).
51(1)	1984 s.2(5).
(2)	1984 s.2(5)(a), (b), (c); 1988 Sch.3 Pt.I para.5(2)(a); 1990 s.5(4).
(3), (4)	1984 s.2(6), (7).
(5)	1984 s.2(8)(a), (c).
(6)	1984 s.2(8).
(7)	1984 s.9(1) "single transferable vote".
52(1)	1988 s.15(5)(a) to (d).
(2)	1988 s.15(5)(e), (f), (6).
(3)	1988 s.15(7).
(4)	1988 s.15(7)(a).
(5)	1988 s.15(7)(b), (c).
53	1984 s.2(14).
54(1)	1984 ss.5(1), (10), 6(3); 1988 Sch.3 Pt.I para.5(4)(a).
(2)	1984 s.5(1)(a), (b), (12A); 1988 Sch.3 Pt.I para.5(4)(c).
(3)	1984 s.5(2).
55(1)	1984 s.5(1).
(2)	1984 ss.5(3), 6(5).
(3)	1984 s.5(4).
(4), (5)	1984 s.6(1), (2).
(6), (7)	1984 s.6(7), (8).
56(1)	1984 s.5(1); 1988 Sch.3 Pt.I para.5(4)(a).
(2)	1984 s.6(4).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(3)	1984 s.5(4).
(4)	1984 s.5(5) to (7), (9).
(5)	1984 s.5(8); 1988 Sch.3 Pt.1 para.5(4)(b).
(6)	1984 s.5(11) to (12A); 1988 Sch.3 Pt.I para.5(4)(c).
(7)	1988 s.23(1), (2).
57(1)	1984 s.7(4) to (7).
(2)	1988 s.12(2).
(3)	1984 s.7(8); 1988 s.12(2).
58(1)	1984 s.8(1).
(2)	1984 s.8(2); 1988 Sch.3 Pt.I para.5(5)(b)
(3)	Interpretation Act 1978 (c.30) s.17(2)(a); 1984 s.8(3).
59	1984 s.1(3).
60(1)	1984 s.2(13).
(2)	1984 s.9(1) “overseas member”.
(3)	1984 s.2(13); 1988 Sch.3 Pt.I para.5(2)(b).
61(1)	1984 s.9(2).
(2)	1984 s.1(6).
Part I, Chapter V.	
62(1)	1988 s.1(1); 1990 Sch.2 para.3(2).
(2)	1988 s.1(5); 1990 Sch.2 para.3(5).
(3)	1988 s.1(2); 1990 Sch.2 para.3(3).
(4)	1988 s.23(1), (2).
(5)	1988 s.1(3); 1990 Sch.2 para.3(4).
(6)	1988 s.1(6), (7) “industrial action”; 1990 s.5(1).
(7)	1988 s.30(1).
(8)	1990 s.5(1).
(9)	1988 s.1(8).
63(1)	1988 s.2(4).
(2)	1988 s.2(1).
(3)	1988 s.2(3).
(4)	1988 s.2(2).
(5), (6)	1988 s.2(5), (6).
64(1)	1988 s.3(1).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(2)	1988 s.3(5).
(3)	1988 s.3(8).
(4), (5)	1988 s.3(7).
65(1)	1988 s.3(2), (3).
(2)	1988 s.3(3)(a) to (d), (f), (6) “enactment”.
(3)	1988 s.3(3)(e).
(4)	1988 s.3(3)(g).
(5)	1988 s.3(3), closing words.
(6)	1988 s.3(4).
(7)	1988 s.3(3)(b),(d), (6) “representative”.
(8)	1988 s.30(1)
66(1)	1988 s.4(1).
(2)	1988 s.4(2), (3).
(3)	1988 s.4(4).
(4)	1988 s.4(6).
67(1) to (9)	1988 s.5(1) to (9).
68(1)	1988 s.7(1).
(2), (3)	1988 s.7(2)(a), (b).
(4)	1988 s.7(3).
69	1974 s.7; 1976 s.3(1).
70	1988 s.32(1) “member”.
Part I, Chapter VI.	
71(1), (2)	1913 s.3(1); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.2(3); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.IV para.2(2).
72(1) to (3)	1913 s.3(3) to (3B); 1984 s.17(1).
(4)	1913 s.3(3C); Films Act 1960 (c.57) s.38(4) “film”; 1984 s.17(1).
73(1)	1913 s.3(1); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.2(3).
(2)	1913 s.3(4); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.2(3).
(3)	1984 s.12(2)(a).
(4)	1984 s.12(2)(b), (4).
74(1)	1913 s.4(1); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.2(3); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.IV para.2(2).
(2)	1984 s.13(3).



**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(3)	1913 s.4(1); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.2(3); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.IV para.2(2); 1984 s.13(1); 1988 s.15(1)(a).
75(1)	1988 s.15(2)(a).
(2), (3)	1988 s.15(3), (4).
(4)	1988 s.15(2)(b).
(5)	1988 s.15(2)(bb); 1990 s.5(5).
(6), (7)	1988 s.15(2)(c), (d).
76	1913 s.4(1A); 1984 s.13(2).
77(1), (2)	1913 s.4(1B); 1984 s.13(2); 1988 Sch.3 para.1(1)(b); 1990 s.5(4).
(3)	1913 s.4(1C); 1984 s.13(2).
(4)	1913 s.4(1D); 1984 s.13(2); 1988 s.14(1).
(5)	1913 s.4(1E); 1984 s.13(2).
78(1), (2)	1988 s.15(5), (6).
(3) to (6)	1988 s.15(7).
79(1)	1984 ss.5(10), 6(3); 1988 s.16(4), Sch.3 para.5(4)(a).
(2), (3)	1988 s.16(2), (3).
80(1)	1988 s.16(1).
(2)	1984 ss.5(3), 6(5); 1988 s.16(4).
(3)	1984 s.5(4); 1988 s.16(4).
(4), (5)	1984 s.6(1), (2); 1988 s.16(4).
(6), (7)	1984 s.6(7), (8); 1988 s.16(4).
81(1)	1988 s.16(1).
(2)	1984 s.6(3), (4); 1988 s.16(4).
(3)	1984 s.5(4); 1988 s.16(4).
(4)	1984 s.5(5) to (7), (9); 1988 s.16(4).
(5)	1984 s.5(8); 1988 s.16(4)(b), Sch.3 para.5(4)(b).
(6)	1984 ss.5(11), 12; 1988 s.16(4).
(7)	1988 s.23(1), (2).
82(1)	1913 s.3(1); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.2(3).
(2) to (4)	1913 s.3(2); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.2(3); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.IV para.2(2).
83(1)	1984 s.14(1), (2)(a).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(2)	1984 s.14(2)(b).
(3)	1984 s.14(3), (4).
84(1) to (3)	1913 s.5(1), Sch.; 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.2(3); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.IV para.2(2).
(4), (5)	1913 s.5(2); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para 2(3); 1984 ss.13(9), (10) “new resolution”.
85(1), (2)	1913 s.6; 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para 2(3).
86(1) to (3)	1984 s.18(1) to (3).
87(1), (2)	1984 s.18(4), (6).
(3)	1984 s.18(5).
(4)	1984 s.18(3).
88(1)	drafting.
(2)	Wages Act 1986 (c.48) s.1(6); 1988 Sch.3 para.6(1).
(3), (4)	Wages Act 1986 (c.48) s.5(3A); 1988 Sch.3 para.6(3)
89(1)	1984 s.15(10).
(2)	1984 s.15(1), (2).
(3)	1984 ss.14(2)(a), 15(5).
(4)	1984 s.14(2)(c).
(5)	1984 s.15(9).
90(1), (2)	1984 s.15(3)(a), (b).
(3)	1984 s.15(4).
(4)	1984 s.16(1).
(5)	1984 s.16(2) to (4).
(6)	1984 s.16(5).
91(1), (2)	1984 s.15(6), (7)(a), (10).
(3)	1984 s.15(7)(b).
(4)	1984 s.15(8).
92	1913 s.4(2); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para 2(3); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.IV para.2(2).
93(1)	1964 s.5(4); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2).
(2)	1984 s.12(5).
(3)	drafting.
94(1), (2)	1984 s.13(7), (8).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(3)	1984 ss.9(1) “overseas member”, 13(10) “overseas member”.
95	1913 s.5A; 1975 Sch.16 Pt.IV para. 2(3); 1978 s.136(2)(a), Sch.16 para.2.
96	1984 s.19(2) “date of the ballot”.
Part I, Chapter VII.	
97(1), (2)	1964 s.1(1)(a), (b); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2).
(3)	1964 s.1(6); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2).
(4)	1964 s.2(1); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2).
98(1)	1964 s.1(1)(a), (b), (4)(a); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2); 1975 Sch.16, Pt.IV, para.10(2).
(2)	1964 s.1(3), (4)(a); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2); 1975 Sch.16, Pt.IV, para.10(2).
99(1)	1964 s.1(2)(d); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2); 1975 Sch.16, Pt.IV, para.10(2).
(2), (3)	1964 s.1(3)(a), (b).
(4)	1964 s.1(3).
(5)	1964 s.1(4)(b); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2); 1975 Sch.16, Pt.IV, para.10(2).
100(1)	1964 s.1(1), (2); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.IV para.10(2).
(2)	1964 s.2(2); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2).
(3), (4)	1964 s.2(3); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2).
101(1), (2)	1964 s.1(5); 1975 Sch.16, Pt.IV, para.10(2).
102(1) to (3)	1964 s.3; 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2).
103(1)	1964 s.4(1); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2); 1975 Sch.16, Pt.IV, para.10(2).
(2)	1964 s.4(2), (10); 1975 Sch.16, Pt.IV, para.10(2).
(3)	1964 s.4(3), (5); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2); 1975 Sch.16, Pt.IV, para.10(2).
(4)	1964 s.4(4); 1975 Sch.16, Pt.IV, para.10(2).
(5)	1964 s.4(7); 1975 Sch.16, Pt.IV, para.10(2).
104	1964 s.4(8); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.IV para.10(3); 1978 Sch.16 para.5; 1978 s.136(2)(b).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

105(1)	1964 s.5(1); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2).
(2), (3)	1964 s.5(3)(a), (b); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2).
(4)	1964 s.5(2).
106(1)	1964 s.10(2); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2).
(2)	1964 Sch.2 para.2(1); 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.IV para.10(2).
(3)	1964 Sch.2 para.4; 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.IV para.10(2).
(4)	1964 Sch.2 paras.2(2), 3.
(5)	1964 Sch.2 para.1; 1971 Sch.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(2).
107(1)	1964 s.6(1).
(2), (3)	1964 s.6(2); 1974 Sch.3 para.10(5); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.IV para.10(2).
(4)	1964 s.6(3).
108(1)	1964 s.7(1); Secretary of State for Employment and Productivity Order 1968 (S.I. 1968/729); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.IV para.10(2).
(2)	1964 s.7(2); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.IV para.10(2).
(3), (4)	1964 s.7(3), (4).
Part I, Chapter VIII.	
109(1)	1988 s.20(7)(a) to (d).
(2)	1990 s.10(1) to (3), (4)(b).
(3)	1988 s.20(7)(e), (8).
110(1)	1988 s.20(1).
(2), (3)	1988 s.20(4), (5).
(4)	1990 s.10(5).
(5)	1988 s.20(2)(b).
111(1)	1988 s.20(2)(a)
(2)	1988 s.20(3).
(3)	1988 s.21(3).
(4)	1988 s.21(2).
(5), (6)	1988 s.21(4), (5).
112(1), (2)	1990 s.11(1), (2).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

113(1), (2)	1988 s.21(1)
114(1)	1988 s.20(3)
(2)	1988 s.20(6)
(3)	1988 s.21(6)
Part I, Chapter IX.	
115(1)	1980 s.1(1).
(2)	1980 s.1(2) to (3A); Funds for Trade Union Ballots Order 1982 (S.I. 1982/953) art.2; 1984 s.20(2), (3).
(3)	1980 s.1(4).
(4)	1980 s.1(5); 1984 s.20(4).
(5)	1980 s.1(7).
116(1)	1980 s.2(1), (3)(a).
(2)	1980 s.2(2); 1984 s.20(5).
(3)	1980 s.2(1), (3)(b); 1988 Sch.3 para.3(1)(a).
(4) to (6)	1980 s.2(4) to (6).
(7)	1980 s.2(8).
117(1)	1974 s.30(1) “special register body”; Companies Consolidation (Consequential Provisions) Act 1985 (c.9) Sch.2.
(2)	drafting.
(3)	1974 ss.2(1), (2), (5), 4; 1982 s.15(7) “rules”.
(4)	1974 s.11(9); 1989 (c.40) s.124.
(5)	1984 s.1(1), (2), (6A), (6B), (7); 1988 s.12(1).
118(1), (2)	drafting.
(3)	1982 s.16(7).
(4)	1974 ss.10(1), 11(1).
(5)	1988 s.6(9)(b).
(6)	1984 s.7(1) to (3).
(7)	1913 s.3(5).
119	
“branch or section”	1984 s.9(1) “section”; 1988 s.32(1) “branch or section”.
“executive”	1984 ss.1(5), 9(1), 19(1) “principal executive committee”; 1988 s.12(6) “principal executive committee”.
“general secretary”	1984 s.1(6B)(b); 1988 s.12(1).

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

“officer”	1974 s.30(1) “officer”; 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III para.7(5).
“official”	1974 s.30(1) “official”; 1975 s.126(1) “official”; 1978 s.153(1); 1988 s.32(1).
“president”	1984 s.1(6B)(a); 1988 s.12(1).
“rules”	1988 s.32(1) “rules”.
120	1964 s.10(5), (6); Industrial Relations (Northern Ireland) Order 1992 (S.I. 1992/807 (N.I.5)).
121	drafting.
Part II	
122	1913 s.2(1A); 1964 s.9(1) “employers’ association”; 1974 s.28(1), Sch.3 paras.2(2), 10(8).
123(1)	1974 s.8(1), (2); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, para.1.
(2), (3)	1974 s.8(9); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, paras.1 and 4.
(4), (5), (6)	1974 s.8(10); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, paras.1 and 5.
124(1)	1974 s.8(3); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III para.1.
(2)	1974 s.8(4); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III para.1.
(3)	1974 s.8(3); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III para.1.
(4)	1974 s.8(5); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III para.1.
125(1), (2)	1974 s.8(6); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, para.1.
(3)	1974 s.8(6A); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, paras.1 and 2.
126(1), (2)	1974 s.8(7); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III, para.3.
(3)	1974 s.8(7); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III para.3; 1978 s.136(3), Sch.16 para.23(3).
127(1)	1974 s.3(1).
(2)	1974 s.3(2)(a),(c),(d).
(3)	1974 s.3(4).
128(1), (2)	1974 s.3(5).
129(1)	1974 ss.3(2)(b), 4(1) to (8).
(2)	drafting
(3)	Friendly Societies Act 1896 (c.25) s.22(2), (3); Industrial Assurance and Friendly Societies Act 1948 (c.39) ss.6(1), (2), 16(4), 21(1)(d); Friendly Societies Act 1974 (c.46) Sch.9 paras.1, 12; 1974 s.9(1), Sch.3 para.5.

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

130(1)	1982 s.17(1).
(2)	1982 s.17(2)(a),(b),(c).
131(1)	1974 ss.10(1) to (4), 11(1) to (8), 12(1) to (5), Sch.2; Criminal Justice Act 1982 (c.48) ss.38, 46.
(2)	1974 s.11(9); 1989 (c.40) s.124.
132	1913 s.6A; 1974 Sch.3 para.2(5); 1984 s.19(4); 1988 ss.15(8), 16(5).
133	1964 s.1(1A); 1974 Sch.3 para.10(3).
134(1)	1964 ss.1(1A), 6(1); 1974 Sch.3 para.10(3).
(2), (3)	1964 s.6(2); 1974 Sch.3 para.10(5); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.IV para.10(2).
(4)	1964 ss.1(1A), 6(3); 1974 Sch.3 para.10(3).
(5)	1964 s.7(1) to (4); Secretary of State for Employment and Productivity Order 1968 (S.I. 1968/729); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.IV para.10(2).
135(1), (2)	drafting.
(3)	1974 ss.10(1), 11(1).
(4)	1913 s.3(5).
136	1974 s.30(1) “officer”; 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III para.7(5).
<b>Part III</b>	
137(1) to (6)	1990 s.1(1) to (6).
(7)	1990 s.3(2).
(8)	1990 s.1(7).
138(1) to (5)	1990 s.2(1) to (5).
139(1) to (3)	1990 Sch.1 para.3(1) to (3).
140(1) to (4)	1990 Sch.1 para.5(1) to (4).
141(1) to (3)	1990 Sch.1 para.6(1) to (3).
142(1) to (4)	1990 Sch.1 para.7(1) to (4).
143(1)	1990 s.3(1).
(2), (3)	1990 s.3(3), (4).
(4)	1990 Sch.1 para.2(1), (2).
144	1982 s.12(1).
145(1)	1982 s.12(2), (7); drafting.
(2)	1982 s.12(2)(a), (4).
(3)	1982 s.12(2)(c), (3), (6).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(4)	1982 s.12(2)(b), (5).
(5)	1982 s.12(7).
146(1)	1978 s.23(1); 1982 s.10(4).
(2)	1978 s.23(2).
(3), (4)	1978 s.23(1A), (1B); 1982 s.10(3).
(5)	1978 s.24(1).
147	1978 s.24(2).
148(1), (2)	1978 s.25(1), (2).
149(1)	1978 s.24(3).
(2) to (4)	1978 s.26(1) to (3).
(5)	1978 ss.25(2), 26(4).
(6)	1978 s.26(5).
150(1)	1978 s.26A(1); 1982 s.11.
(2)	1978 ss.24(3), 26A(2); 1982 s.11.
(3)	1978 s.26A(3); 1982 s.11.
151(1)	1978 s.23(7); 1988 Sch.3 para.2(1).
(2)	1978 s.129.
152(1), (2)	1978 s.58(1), (2); 1982 s.3.
(3), (4)	1978 s.58(13), (14); 1988 Sch.3 para.2(2)(a).
153	1978 s.59; 1982 Sch.3 para.17.
154	1978 ss.64(3), 64A(2); 1980 s.8; 1982 Sch.3 paras.19, 20.
155(1)	1978 s.72A(1), (2); 1982 s.6.
(2)	1978 s.72A(2)(a), (3); 1982 s.6.
(3)	1978 s.72A(2)(b), (c); 1982 s.6.
156(1)	1978 s.73(4A); 1982 s.4(1); Unfair Dismissal (Increase of Limits of Basic and Special Awards) Order 1992 (S.I. 1992/313).
(2)	1978 s.73(7C); 1982 s.4(2).
157(1)	1978 s.72(c) and closing words; 1982 s.5(2).
(2)	1978 s.71(2)(b); 1982 s.5(1).
158(1) to (6)	1978 s.75A(1) to (6); 1982 s.5(3); Unfair Dismissal (Increase of Limits of Basic and Special Awards) Order 1992 (S.I. 1992/313).
159(1)	1978 ss.73(4B), 75A(7), 154(1); 1982 ss.4(1), 5(3).
(2)	1978 s.154(3).



---

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

---

(3)	1978 ss.73(4B), 75A(7); 1982 ss.4(1), 5(3).
160(1) to (3)	1978 s.76A(1) to (3); 1982 s.7.
161(1)	1978 s.77(1); 1982 s.8(1).
(2), (3)	1978 s.77(2); 1982 Sch.3 para.24(1).
(4) to (6)	1978 s.77(10), (11).
162(1)	1978 s.77(3); 1982 Sch.3 para.24(2).
(2), (3)	1978 s.77(3), (3A); 1982 s.8(2).
(4)	1978 s.77(4).
163(1), (2)	1978 s.77(5); 1982 Sch.3 para.24(3).
(3) to (6)	1978 s.77(6) to (9).
164(1)	1978 s.78(1).
(2), (3)	1978 s.78(2)
(4) to (7)	1978 s.78(3) to (6)
165(1), (2)	1978 s.79(1).
166(1), (2)	1978 s.79(2)
(3) to (5)	1978 s.79(3)
167(1) to (3)	drafting.
168(1)	1978 s.27(1)(a); 1989 s.14(a).
(2)	1978 s.27(1)(b); 1989 s.14(b).
(3)	1978 s.27(2).
(4)	1978 s.27(7).
169(1)	1978 s.27(3).
(2)	1978 s.27(3)(a).
(3)	1978 s.27(3)(b), (4).
(4)	1978 s.27(5), (6).
(5)	1978 s.27(7).
170(1)	1978 s.28(1), (2).
(2) to (4)	1978 s.28(2) to (4).
171	1978 s.30(1).
172(1), (2)	1978 s.30(2).
(3)	1978 s.30(3).
173(1)	1978 s.32(1); 1989 Sch.6 para.19.
(2)	1978 s.129.
174(1)	1980 s.4(1), (2).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(2), (3)	1974 s.30(1) “union membership agreement”, (5A); 1976 s.3(3), (4); 1980 s.4(10).
(4)	1980 s.4(9).
(5), (6)	1980 s.4(4), (5).
175	1980 s.4(6).
176(1)	1980 s.4(7).
(2)	1980 s.5(1), (2).
(3)	1980 s.5(3).
(4)	1980 s.5(4)(a), (7).
(5)	1980 s.5(4)(b), (8).
(6), (7)	1980 s.5(5), (6).
(8)	1980 s.5(8A); 1988 Sch.3 para.3(2).
177(1)	1980 s.4(10).
(2), (3)	1980 s.4(3).
Part IV.	
178(1), (2)	1974 ss.29(1), 30(1) “collective agreement”; 1975 s.126(1) “collective agreement”, “collective bargaining”; 1978 s.153(1).
(3)	1975 s.126(1) “recognition”; 1978 s.32(2); 1980 Sch.1 para.6; 1989 Sch.6 para.19..
179(1), (2)	1974 s.18(1), (2).
(3), (4)	1974 s.18(3).
180(1), (2)	1974 s.18(4).
(3)	1974 s.18(5).
181(1), (2)	1975 s.17(1), (2)(a).
(3) to (5)	1975 s.17(3) to (5).
182(1), (2)	1975 s.18(1), (2).
183(1)	1975 s.19(1).
(2)	1975 s.19(2), (3).
(3) to (6)	1975 s.19(4) to (7).
184(1) to (4)	1975 s.20(1) to (4).
185(1), (2)	1975 s.21(1), (2).
(3)	1975 s.21(3), (4).
(4)	1975 s.21(5)(a).
(5) to (7)	1975 s.21(6) to (8).
186	1982 s.13(1).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

187(1)	1982 s.13(1) to (3).
(2)	1982 ss.12(2), 13(2).
(3)	1982 s.13(4).
188(1)	1975 s.99(1).
(2)	1975 s.99(3); Employment Protection (Handling of Redundancies) Variation Order 1979 (S.I. 1979/958).
(3) to (8)	1975 s.99(4) to (9).
189(1)	1975 s.101(1), (7).
(2) to (5)	1975 s.101(3) to (6).
(6)	1975 s.101(2).
190(1) to (3)	1975 s.102(1) to (3).
(4)	1975 s.102(4); 1978 Sch.16 para.23(4).
(5)	1975 s.106(3); 1978 Sch.16 para.23(6).
(6)	1975 Sch.12 para.7.
191(1) to (7)	1975 s.102(5) to (11).
192(1) to (3)	1975 s.103(1) to (3).
(4)	1975 s.108(1).
193(1), (2)	1975 s.100(1); Employment Protection (Handling of Redundancies) Variation Order 1979 (S.I. 1979/958).
(3), (4)	1975 s.100(2), (3).
(5)	1975 s.100(5).
(6)	1975 s.100(1), (4).
(7)	1975 s.100(6).
194(1)	1975 s.105(1); Criminal Justice Act 1982 (c.48) s.38.
(2)	1975 s.105(2), (3).
(3), (4)	1975 s.117(1), (2)
195(1)	1975 s.126(6).
(2)	1975 s.126(1) "business", (7).
(3)	1975 s.106(2).
196	1975 s.99(2).
197(1), (2)	1975 s.106(4), (5).
198(1), (2)	1975 s.107(1).
(3) to (5)	1975 s.107(2) to (4).
199(1)	1975 s.6(1).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(2), (3)	1975 s.6(2); 1978 Sch.16 para.23(2).
(4)	1975 s.6(10).
200(1)	1975 s.6(3), (10).
(2), (3)	1975 s.6(4), (5).
(4)	1975 s.6(6) to (8).
(5)	1975 s.6(5), (8), (9).
201(1)	1990 s.12(1), (2)(b).
(2), (3)	1990 s.12(4), (5).
(4)	1990 s.12(6), (9).
202(1)	1990 s.12(7), (9).
(2)	1990 s.12(8).
(3)	1990 s.12(7)(b).
203(1)	1980 s.3(1); 1988 s.18(1).
(2)	1980 s.3(6).
204(1)	1980 s.3(2), (3).
(2)	1980 s.3(4).
(3), (4)	1980 s.3(5).
205(1)	1990 s.12(1), (2)(a).
(2)	1990 s.12(3).
(3)	1990 s.12(5).
(4)	1990 s.12(6), (9).
206(1), (2)	1990 s.12(7), (9).
207(1)	1975 s.6(11); 1980 s.3(8).
(2)	1975 s.6(11).
(3)	1980 s.3(8).
208(1)	1975 s.6(10A); 1980 Sch.1 para.4.
(2)	1980 s.3(7).
(3)	1975 s.6(10A); 1980 s.3(7), Sch.1 para.4.
209	1975 s.1(2).
210(1) to (3)	1975 s.2(1) to (3).
211	1975 s.2(4).
212(1)	1975 s.3(1).
(2), (3)	1975 s.3(2).
(4)	1975 s.3(3), (4), (6).
(5)	1975 s.3(5).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

213(1), (2)	1975 s.4(1).
(3)	1975 s.4(2).
214(1), (2)	1975 s.5(1), (2).
215(1)	1919 s.4(1).
(2)	1919 ss.4(1), 5(1).
(3), (4)	1919 s.5(2), (3).
(5)	1919 s.5(3), proviso.
(6)	1919 s.13.
216(1), (2)	1919 s.4(2), (3).
(3)	1919 s.4(1).
(4), (5)	1919 s.4(4), (5).
(6)	1919 s.9.
217	Administration of Justice (Scotland) Act 1972 (c.59) s.3(3); 1975 s.10(2); 1982 Sch.3 para.11(a), (b).
218(1) to (5)	1919 s.8 “trade dispute”; 1975 ss.126(1) “trade dispute”, 126A(1) to (4), (6); 1982 Sch.3 paras.10, 13(2), (3).
<b>Part V</b>	
219(1)	1974 s.13(1); 1976 s.3(2).
(2)	1974 s.13(4).
(3)	1980 s.16(2).
(4)	drafting.
220(1), (2)	1974 s.15(1), (2); 1980 s.16(1).
(3)	1974 s.15(3); 1980 s.16(1); 1982 Sch.3 para.12.
(4)	1974 s.15(4); 1980 s.16(1).
221(1), (2)	1974 s.17(1), (2); 1975 Sch.16 Pt.III para.6.
222(1), (2)	1988 s.10(1), (2).
(3)	1982 s.14(1).
(4)	1988 s.10(3)(a).
(5)	1988 s.10(1), (2), (3)(b).
223	1990 s.9(2), (3).
224(1) to (6)	1990 s.4(1) to (6).
225(1)	1982 s.14(1).
(2)	1982 s.14(2), (3).
226(1)	1984 s.10(1); 1990 Sch.2 para.2(2).

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

(2)	1984 s.10(3), (4), (4A); 1988 Sch.3 para.5(7); 1990 Sch.2 para.2(3), (5), (6).
(3)	1984 s.10(3A); 1988 s.17(2); 1990 Sch.2 para.2(4).
(4)	1984 s.11(11); 1988 s.1(6), Sch.3 para.5(8)(f).
227(1)	1984 s.11(1); 1988 Sch.3 para.5(8)(a).
(2)	1984 s.11(2); 1988 Sch.3 para.5(8)(b).
228(1)	1984 s.11(1A); 1988 s.17(1).
(2)	1984 s.11(1B)(a); 1988 s.17(1).
(3)	1984 s.11(1B)(b), (c); 1988 s.17(1).
229(1)	1984 s.11(3).
(2)	1984 s.11(4); 1988 Sch.3 para.5(8)(d).
(3)	1984 s.11(4A); 1990 s.7(1).
(4)	1984 s.11(3); 1988 Sch.3 para.5(8)(c).
230(1)	1984 s.11(5).
(2)	1984 s.11(6)(a).
(3)	1984 s.11(6)(b).
(4)	1984 s.11(7).
231	1984 s.11(8).
232(1), (2)	1984 s.11(9), (10).
(3)	1984 ss.9(1), 11(11) “overseas member”.
(4), (5)	1990 s.5(2), (3).
233(1)	1990 s.7(2).
(2)	1990 s.7(5) “specified person”.
(3), (4)	1990 s.7(3), (4).
234(1) to (6)	1990 s.8(1) to (6).
235	1990 s.5(1).
236	1974 s.16.
237(1) to (6)	1978 s.62A(1) to (6); 1990 s.9(1).
238(1)	1978 s.62(1), (5); 1982 s.9(4); 1990 Sch.2 para.1(2).
(2)	1978 s.62(2); 1982 s.9(2).
(3)	1978 s.62(4)(b), (5); 1982 s.9(3), Sch.3 para.18; 1990 Sch.2 para.1(2).
(4)	1978 s.62(4)(c).
(5)	1978 s.62(4)(a).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

239(1)	drafting.
(2)	1978 s.67(3); 1982 s.9(5).
(3)	1978 s.62(3); 1982 s.9(4).
240(1)	1875 s.5; Merchant Shipping Act 1970 (c.36) s.42(1).
(2)	Malicious Damage Act 1861 (c.97) s.58; 1875 s.15.
(3)	1875 s.5; Criminal Procedure (Scotland) Act 1975 (c.21) s.289C(4), (5), (8); Criminal Law Act 1977 (c.45) s.31(5), (6), (9), Sch.11 para.5.; Criminal Justice Act 1982 (c.48) ss.37, 46.
(4)	1875 s.16; Merchant Shipping Act 1970 (c.36) Sch.3 para.1.
241(1)	1875 s.7(1).
(2)	1875 s.7(1); Public Order Act 1986 (c.64) Sch.2 para.1(1).
(3)	1875 s.7(1); Public Order Act 1986 (c.64) Sch.2 para.1(2).
242(1)	Criminal Law Act 1977 (c.45) s.1(3).
(2)	Criminal Law Act 1977 (c.45) s.65(10).
243(1) to (4)	1875 s.3; 1974 Sch.3 para.1.
(5)	drafting.
244(1)	1974 s.29(1); 1982 s.18(2).
(2)	1974 s.29(2); 1982 s.18(3).
(3)	1974 s.29(3); 1982 s.18(4).
(4)	1974 s.29(5).
(5)	1974 s.29(6); 1982 s.18(6).
245	1988 s.30(1).
246	
“date of the ballot”	1984 s.10(5) “date of the ballot”.
“place of work”	1984 s.10(5) “place of work”; 1988 s.17(3).
“strike”	1984 s.11(11) “strike”.
“working hours”	1984 s.11(11) “working hours”; 1990 s.5(1).
Part VI	
247(1)	1975 s.1(1).
(2)	1975 Sch.1 para.1.
(3), (4)	1975 Sch.1 para.11(1), (2).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(5)	1975 Sch.1 para.12.
(6)	1975 Sch.1 para.9.
248(1)	1975 Sch.1 paras.1, 2(1).
(2)	1975 Sch.1 para.2(2).
(3)	1975 Sch.1 para.2(4).
(4)	1975 Sch.1 para.2(3).
(5), (6)	1975 Sch.1 para.4(1), (2).
(7)	1975 Sch.1 para.5.
249(1)	1975 Sch.1 para.3(1).
(2)	1975 Sch.1 paras.2(1),(3) and 3(3),(4).
(3)	1975 Sch.1 para.3(2).
(4)	1975 Sch.1 para.3(5),(6).
(5)	1975 Sch.1 para.3(7) to (9); Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985 (c.66) s.75(10).
250(1)	1975 Sch.1 para.28(a).
(2)	1975 Sch.1 para.30.
(3)	1975 Sch.1 para.31.
(4)	1975 Sch.1 paras.28, 30, 31; Transfer of Functions (Minister for the Civil Service and Treasury) Order 1981 (S.I. 1981/1670).
251(1)	1975 Sch.1 para.6.
(2)	1975 Sch.1 para.7.
(3)	1975 Sch.1 paras.6, 7; Transfer of Functions (Minister for the Civil Service and Treasury) Order 1981 (S.I. 1981/1670).
(4)	1975 Sch.1 para.32; Transfer of Functions (Minister for the Civil Service and Treasury) Order 1981 (S.I. 1981/1670).
(5)	1975 Sch.1 para.10(1),(2).
252(1)	1975 Sch.1 para.33.
(2)	1975 Sch.1 para.29; Transfer of Functions (Minister for the Civil Service and Treasury) Order 1981 (S.I. 1981/1670).
253(1)	1975 Sch.1 para.13(1), (3).
(2)	1975 Sch.1 paras.34, 35(1).
(3), (4)	1975 Sch.1 para.35(2).
254(1), (2)	1975 s.7(1).
(3)	1975 s.7(4).



**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(4)	1964 s.8; 1974 Sch.3 para.10(7); 1975 s.7(5), (6).
(5)	1975 Sch.1 para.8.
(6)	1980 s.1(6).
255(1)	1975 Sch.1 para.28(c).
(2)	1975 Sch.1 para.30.
(3)	1975 Sch.1 para.31.
(4)	1975 Sch.1 paras.28, 30, 31; Transfer of Functions (Minister for the Civil Service and Treasury) Order 1981 (S.I. 1981/1670).
256(1), (2)	1988 s.22(1).
(3)	1988 s.22(2).
(4)	1975 Sch.1 para.32A; 1988 s.22(3).
257(1), (2)	1975 s.9(1), (2).
258(1)	1975 Sch.1 para.13(2), (3).
(2)	1975 Sch.1 para.35(1).
259(1)	1975 s.10(1).
(2)	1975 Sch.1 para.27.
(3)	1975 Sch.1 para.8.
260(1) to (3)	1975 Sch.1 para.14(1) to (3).
(4), (5)	1975 Sch.1 para.16(1), (2).
(6)	1975 Sch.1 para.21.
261(1) to (4)	1975 Sch.1 para.15(1) to (4).
(5)	1975 Sch.1 para.15(5), (6); Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985 (c.66) s.75(10).
(6)	1975 Sch.1 para.15(7).
262(1)	1975 Sch.1 para.28(b).
(2)	1975 Sch.1 para.30.
(3)	1975 Sch.1 para.31.
(4)	1975 Sch.1 paras.28, 30, 31; Transfer of Functions (Minister for the Civil Service and Treasury) Order 1981 (S.I. 1981/1670).
263(1)	1975 Sch.1 para.17(1), (2).
(2)	1975 Sch.1 para.17(3).
(3)	1975 Sch.1 para.18.
(4)	1975 Sch.1 para.19.
(5)	1975 Sch.1 para.20.

*Changes to legislation: Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(6)	Administration of Justice (Scotland) Act 1972 (c.59) s.3(3); 1975 s.10(2), Sch.1 para.26.
264(1)	1975 Sch.1 para.22.
(2)	1975 Sch.1 para.23(1), (2).
(3)	1975 Sch.1 para.24.
265(1)	1975 Sch.1 paras.13(1), 25.
(2)	1975 Sch.1 para.35(1).
266(1), (2)	1988 s.19(1).
(3)	1988 Sch.1 para.11.
(4)	1988 Sch.1 para.4(1), (2).
(5)	1988 s.19(3).
267(1)	1988 Sch.1 para.1(3).
(2), (3)	1988 Sch.1 para.1(1), (2).
268 (1) to (5)	1988 Sch.1 para.2(1) to (5).
269(1)	1988 Sch.1 para.3(1), (2).
(2), (3)	1988 Sch.1 para.5(1), (2).
(4)	1988 Sch.1 para.6.
270(1)	1988 Sch.1 para.7(1).
(2)	1988 Sch.1 para.8(1).
(3)	1988 Sch.1 paras.7(2), 8(2).
271(1)	1988 Sch.1 para.10(1), (2).
(2)	1988 Sch.1 para.9(1)(a), (b).
(3)	1988 Sch.1 para.9(1)(c).
(4)	1988 Sch.1 para.9(2).
272	1975 Sch.1 para.35(3); 1988 Sch.1 para.14.
Part VII	
273(1)	1919 s.10(1); 1974 Sch.1 para.33(1); 1975 s.121(1), Sch.16 Pt.IV para.3; 1978 s.138(1); 1988 s.30(3); 1990 Sch.1 para.11(1).
(2)	1975 s.121(1); 1980 Sch.1 para.5; 1984 s.18(7).
(3)	1919 s.10(2); 1974 Sch.1 para.33(2); 1975 s.121(2), Sch.16 Pt.III para.33, Pt.IV para.3; 1978 s.138(2); 1988 s.30(3); 1990 Sch.1 para.11(2).

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(4)	1974 Sch.1 para.33(3); 1975 s.121(7), Sch.16 Pt.III para.33; 1978 s.138(4), Sch.16 para.23(11).
(5)	1990 Sch.1 para.13.
(6)	drafting.
274(1)	1919 s.10(3); 1974 Sch.1 para.33(2); 1975 s.121(3), Sch.16 Pt.IV para.3; Armed Forces Act 1981 (c.55) Sch.3 para.1(1).
(2)	1919 s.10(3); 1974 Sch.1 para.33(4)(b); 1975 s.121(3), Sch.16 Pt.IV para.3; Interpretation Act 1978 (c.30) s.17(2)(a); Reserve Forces Act 1980 (c.9) Sch.9 para.15; 1990 Sch.1 para.11(3).
275(1), (2)	1919 s.10(4); 1974 Sch.1 para.33(5); 1975 s.121(4), Sch.16 Pt.IV para.3; 1978 s.138(4); 1990 Sch.1 para.11(4).
276(1)	1990 Sch.1 para.18.
(2)	1988 s.30(2).
277(1), (2)	1990 Sch.1 para.12(1), (2).
(3)	1990 Sch.1 para.12(4).
(4)	1990 Sch.1 para.13.
(5), (6)	1990 Sch.1 para.12(5), (6)
278(1), (2)	1975 ss.121(1), 122(1); 1978 ss.138(1), 139(1); 1990 Sch.1 para.12(1).
(3)	1975 s.122(4); 1978 s.139(3); 1990 Sch.1 para.12(3).
(4)	1975 s.122(1); 1978 s.138(1); 1990 Sch.1 para.12(3).
(5)	1990 Sch.1 para.13.
(6)	1975 s.122(5) to (8); House of Commons (Administration) Act 1978 (c.36) Sch.2 para.5; 1978 s.139(4) to (9); 1990 Sch.1 para.12(3).
279	1974 s.30(2); 1975 s.126(1) “worker”; National Health Service Act 1977 (c.49) Sch.15 para.62; National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 (c.29) Sch.16 para.39; Health Services Act 1980 (c.53) Sch.1 para.25; Family Practitioner Committees (Consequential Modifications) Order 1985 (S.I. 1985/39) art.7(3), (9), (11), (13); National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c.19) s.2(1)(b).

**Changes to legislation:** Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

280(1)	1974 s.30(1) “employee”, “worker”; 1975 s.126(1) “employee”, “worker”; 1978 s.146(2); 1990 Sch.1 para.14.
(2)	1974 s.30(1) “police service”; 1978 s.146(3); 1990 Sch.1 para.14.
281(1) to (4)	1978 s.146(4) to (7).
(5)	1978 ss.146(8), 151, Sch.13; 1982 Sch.2 para.8(5).
(6)	1978 s.152, Sch.14 Pt.I.
282(1), (2)	1975 s.119(7); 1982 Sch.2 para.6(1).
283(1)	1975 s.119(12)
(2)	1975 s.119(14).
284	1975 s.119(4); 1978 s.144(2); 1990 Sch.1 para.16(3).
285(1)	1975 s.119(5); 1978 s.141(2); 1990 Sch.1 para.15.
(2)	1975 s.119(6); 1978 s.141(5); 1990 Sch.1 para.16(1), (2).
286(1), (2)	1975 s.119(15); 1978 s.149(1), (2).
(3)	1975 s.123(3); 1978 s.154(3).
(4)	1975 s.119(16); 1978 s.149(4).
287(1)	1975 s.127(2); 1978 s.137(2); Employment (Continental Shelf) Act 1978 (c.46) s.1(1); drafting.
(2)	1975 s.127(1)(e) to (fg); 1978 s.137(1); 1980 Sch.1 para.7; 1982 Sch.3 para.13(4); 1990 Sch.1 para.17.
(3)	1975 s.127(3); 1978 s.137(3).
(4)	1975 s.127(4); 1978 s.137(4).
(5)	1978 s.137(5); Employment (Continental Shelf) Act 1978 (c.46) s.2; drafting.
288(1)	1974 Sch.1 para.32(1); 1975 s.118(1); 1978 s.140(1); 1980 s.4(11); 1988 s.4(7); 1990 Sch.1 para.10(1).
(2)	1978 s.140(2)(d), (e), (g); 1980 s.4(11); 1990 Sch.1 para.10(2).
(3)	1975 s.118(2)(a), (d).
289	1974 s.30(6); 1975 s.126(8); 1978 s.153(5).
290	1978 s.133(1); 1980 Sch.1 para.17; 1988 Sch.3 para.2(3); 1990 Sch.1 para.4.

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

291(1)	1980 s.4(8).
(2)	1978 s.136(1)(c), (e), (g); 1980 ss.2(7), 5(9); 1988 ss.4(5), 5(10); 1990 Sch.1 para.8.
(3)	Tribunals and Inquiries Act 1971 (c.62) s.13(1A); 1978 s.136(5), Sch.16 para.11; 1980 Sch.1 para.19; 1988 Sch.3 para.2(4).
292(1)	1975 Sch.12 para.1; 1978 Sch.12 para.1..
(2)	1975 Sch.12 para.2; 1978 Sch.12 para.2.
(3)	1975 Sch.12 para.3(1), (2); 1978 Sch.12 para.3(1), (2).
(4)	1975 Sch.12 para.5; 1978 Sch.12 para.5.
(5)	1975 Sch.12 para.6; 1978 Sch.12 para.6.
293(1)	drafting.
(2)	1975 s.123(3); 1978 s.154(3).
(3)	1975 s.123(2); 1978 s.154(2).
294(1)	1975 s.128(1); 1978 s.157(1).
(2)	1975 s.128(3); 1978 s.157(3).
(3)	1975 s.123(3); 1978 s.154(3).
(4)	1975 s.128(3); 1978 s.157(3).
(5)	1975 s.128(4); 1978 s.157(4).
(6)	1975 s.123(1), (2); 1978 s.154(1), (2).
295(1)	
“contract of employment”	1974 s.30(1); 1978 s.153(1); 1988 s.32(1).
“employee”	1974 s.30(1); 1975 s.126(1); 1978 s.153(1).
“employer”	1974 s.30(1) “employer” para.(a); 1975 s.126(1); 1978 s.153(1); 1988 s.32(1).
(2)	drafting.
296(1)	1919 s.8 “worker”; 1974 s.30(1) “worker”; 1975 s.126(1); 1982 Sch.3 para.10; 1988 s.32(1).
(2)	1974 s.30(1) “employer” para.(b); 1975 s.126(1); 1988 s.32(1).
297	1974 s.30(5); 1975 s.126(1) “associated employer”.
298	
“act” and “action”	1974 s.30(1) “act” and “action”; 1978 s.153(1).
“contravention”	1988 s.32(1) “contravention”.

---

**Changes to legislation:** *Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

---

“dismiss”, &c.	1975 s.126(1); 1978 s.153(1) “effective date of termination”, Sch.16 para.23(13).
“post”	1913 s.4(1F); 1980 s.2(9); 1984 ss.9(1), 11(11) “post”, 13(2); 1988 s.13(6).
“tort”	1974 s.30(1) “tort”; 1980 s.16(3); 1982 s.19(2).
299	drafting.
300(1) to (3)	drafting.
301(1)	drafting
(2)(a)	1974 s.31(5).
(b)	1984 s.22(6); 1988 s.34(6); Industrial Relations (Northern Ireland) Order 1992 (S.I. 1992/807 (N.I.5)) art.67(2).
(c), (d)	1975 s.129(6); 1978 s.160(3); 1982 s.22(5).
(e), (f)	drafting.
(3)	drafting; 1964 s.10(3).
302	drafting.
303	drafting.

---

**Changes to legislation:**

Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.

[View outstanding changes](#)

**Changes and effects yet to be applied to :**

- s. 240(3) words repealed by [2003 c. 44 Sch. 37 Pt. 9](#)
- s. 279(2) substituted by [2022 c. 31 Sch. 3 para. 45](#)
- s. 279(2) words substituted by [2006 c. 28 Sch. 8 para. 30\(a\)](#)
- s. 279(2)(b) words added by [2006 c. 28 Sch. 8 para. 30\(b\)](#)
- s. 287(1) substituted by [1998 c. 17 Sch. 4 para. 34\(2\)](#)
- s. 287(5) repealed by [1998 c. 17 Sch. 4 para. 34\(3\)Sch. 5 Pt. 1](#)
- Sch. A1 para. 163 repealed by [1999 c. 26 Sch. 9\(3\)](#)

**Changes and effects yet to be applied to the whole Act associated Parts and Chapters:**

Whole provisions yet to be inserted into this Act (including any effects on those provisions):

- s. 212A(1)(zb) inserted by [2023 c. 46 Sch. para. 1](#)